

# TEI for Linguistic Corpora

*Sebastian Rahtz*

## TEI Corpus

This TEI customization file includes the minimum TEI modules likely to be needed in the creation of linguistic corpora.

### 1 Classes defined

#### 1.1 Class att.ascribed

provides attributes for elements representing speech or action that can be ascribed to a specific individual.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**who** indicates the person, or group of people, to whom the element content is ascribed.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *change q setting sp*

**Module:** tei

#### 1.2 Class att.authorialIntervention

provides attributes describing the nature of an authorial intervention.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**hand** signifies the hand of the agent which made the addition or performed the deletion.

**status** may be used to indicate faulty deletions, e.g. strikeouts which include too much or too little text, or erroneous additions, e.g., an insertion which duplicates some of the text already present. Sample values include:

**duplicate** (all of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original, whether the duplication is word-for-word or less exact.)

**duplicate-partial** (part of the text indicated as an addition duplicates some text that is in the original)

**excessStart** (some text at the beginning of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.)

**excessEnd** (some text at the end of the deletion is marked as deleted even though it clearly should not be deleted.)

**shortStart** (some text at the beginning of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.)

**shortEnd** (some text at the end of the deletion is not marked as deleted even though it clearly should be.)

**unremarkable** (the deletion is not faulty.)

**type** classifies the type of addition or deletion using any convenient typology.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *add del*

**Module:** tei

## 1 CLASSES DEFINED

---

### 1.3 Class att.dataable

provides attributes for normalization of elements that contain dataable events.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**notBefore** specifies the earliest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**notAfter** specifies the latest possible date for the event in standard form, e.g. yyyy-mm-dd.

**from** indicates the starting point of the period in standard form.

**to** indicates the ending point of the period in standard form.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *affiliation age birth date death education faith floruit langKnowledge langKnown nationality persEvent persName persState persTrait relation residence sex socecStatus time*

**Module:** tei

### 1.4 Class att.datePart

(attributes for temporal expression) attributes for component elements of temporal expressions involving dates and time

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**value** supplies the value of a date or time in a standard form.

**Example** Examples of W3C date, time, and date & time formats.

```
<date value="1945-10-24">24 Oct 45</date>
<date value="1996-09-24T07:25Z">September 24th, 1996 at 3:25 in the morning</date>
<time value="1999-01-04T20:42:05:00">Jan 4 1999 at 8 pm</time>
<time value="14:12:38">fourteen twelve and 38 seconds</time>
<date value="1962-10">October of 1962</date>
<date value="--06-12">June 12th</date>
<date value="---01">the first of each month</date>
<date value="--08">August</date>
<date value="2006">MMVI</date>
```

**Example** Examples of time formats with reduced precision.

```
<date value="2006-05-18T10:03+09:00">a few minutes after ten in the morning on Thu 18 May</date>
<time value="03:00">3 A.M.</time>
<time value="12">around noon</time>
```

Software intended for use with W3C XML Schema datatypes may be unable to properly process times expressed with reduced precision.

**Example A** usage example of <date>.

```
This list
  begins in the year 1632, more precisely on Trinity Sunday,
  i.e. the Sunday after Pentecost, in that year the <date calendar="Julian" value="1632-06-01" style="font-family: serif;">
  style)</date>.
```

**Example A** usage example of <time>.

```
He likes to be
  punctual. I said <q>
  <time value="12">around noon</time>
</q>,
  and he showed up at <time value="12:00:00">12 O'clock</time>
  on the dot.
```

**dur** (duration) indicates the length of this element in time.

**Example** Examples of W3C durations.

```
<distance dur="PT45M">forty-five minutes</distance>
<distance dur="P1DT12H">a day and a half</distance>
<distance dur="P7D">a week</distance>
<distance dur="PT0.02S">20 ms</distance>
```

**Note:** In providing a ‘regularized’ form, no claim is made that the form in the source text is incorrect; the regularized form is simply that chosen as the main form for purposes of unifying variant forms under a single heading.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *date day distance hour minute month occasion second time week year*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.5 Class att.declarable

provides attributes for those elements in the TEI Header which may be independently selected by means of the specialpurpose decls attribute.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**default** indicates whether or not this element is selected by default when its parent is selected. Legal values are:

**true** (This element is selected if its parent is selected)

**false** (This element can only be selected explicitly, unless it is the only one of its kind, in which case it is selected if its parent is selected.)

**Note:** The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter «CCAS». Only one element of a particular type may have a **default** attribute with a value of **true**.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *bibl biblFull biblItem biblStruct broadcast correction editorialDecl equipment hyphenation interpretation langUsage listBibl listPerson metDecl normalization particDesc projectDesc quotation recording refsDecl samplingDecl scriptStmt segmentation settingDesc sourceDesc stdVals textClass textDesc*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.6 Class att.declaring

provides attributes for elements which may be independently associated with a particular declarable element within the header, thus overriding the inherited default for that element.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**decls** identifies one or more declarable elements within the header, which are understood to apply to the element bearing this attribute and its content.

**Note:** The rules governing the association of declarable elements with individual parts of a TEI text are fully defined in chapter «CCAS».

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *back body div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 front gloss group ptr ref term text*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.7 Class att.divLike

provides a set of attributes common to all elements which behave in the same way as divisions.

**Class:** att.metrical

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.metrical ]

**type** specifies a name conventionally used for this level of subdivision, e.g. act, volume, book, section, canto, etc.

**org** specifies how the content of the division is organized. Legal values are:

**composite** (composite content: i.e. no claim is made about the sequence in which the immediate contents of this division are to be processed, or their inter-relationships.)

**uniform** (uniform content: i.e. the immediate contents of this element are regarded as forming a logical unit, to be processed in sequence.)

**sample** indicates whether this division is a sample of the original source and if so, from which part. Legal values are:

**initial** (division lacks material present at end in source.)

**medial** (division lacks material at start and end.)

**final** (division lacks material at start.)

**unknown** (position of sampled material within original unknown.)

**complete** (division is not a sample.)

**part** specifies whether or not the division is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a speech which is divided between two or more verse stanzas. Legal values are:

**Y** (the division is incomplete in some respect)

**N** (either the division is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness.)

**I** (the initial part of an incomplete division)

**M** (a medial part of an incomplete division)

**F** (the final part of an incomplete division)

**Class:** att.metrical

**Members:** *div div0 div1 div2 div3 div4 div5 div6 div7 lg*

**Module:** tei

### 1.8 Class att.editLike

provides attributes describing the nature of a encoded scholarly intervention or interpretation of any kind.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**cert** signifies the degree of certainty associated with the intervention or interpretation. Values are:

**high** (a high degree of certainty is associated with the encoded intervention.)

**medium** (the encoder is reasonably certain of the appropriateness of the intervention)

**low** (the encoded intervention is doubtful or uncertain)

**resp** indicates the agency responsible for the intervention or interpretation, for example an editor or transcriber.

**evidence** indicates the nature of the evidence supporting the reliability or accuracy of the intervention or interpretation. Sample values include:

**internal** (there is internal evidence to support the intervention.)

**external** (there is internal evidence to support the intervention.)

**conjecture** (the intervention or interpretation has been made by the editor, cataloguer, or scholar on the basis of their expertise.)

**Note:** The members of this attribute class are typically used to represent any kind of editorial intervention in a text, for example a correction or interpretation, or to date or localize manuscripts etc.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *add affiliation age birth corr date death del education expan faith floruit gap lang-Knowledge langKnown nationality persEvent persName persState persTrait reg relation residence sex socecStatus time unclear*

**Module:** tei

## 1.9 Class att.global

provides a set of attributes common to all elements in the TEI encoding scheme.

**Class:** *att.global.linking: att.global.analytic*

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.global.linkingatt.global.analytic*]

**xml:space** signals an intention that white space should be preserved by applications Legal values are:

**default**

**preserve**

**xml:id** provides a unique identifier for the element bearing the attribute.

**n** gives a number (or other label) for an element, which is not necessarily unique within the document.

**xml:lang** indicates the language of the element content using the codes from RFC 3066

**rend** indicates how the element in question was rendered or presented in the source text.

### Example

```
<head rend="align(center) slant(upright) case(allcaps)">
  <lb/>To The
  <lb/>Duchesse
  <lb/>of
  <lb/>Newcastle,
  <lb/>On Her
  <lb/>
  <hi rend="case(mixed)">New Blazing-World</hi>.
</head>
```

1

**xml:base** provides a base URI reference with which applications can resolve relative URI references into absolute URI references.

### Example

<sup>1</sup>From the forward by William Newcastle in Margaret Cavendish, Duchess of Newcastle's The description of a new world, called the blazing-world, WWP TR00253

```
<div type="bibl">
  <head>Bibliography</head>
  <listBibl xml:base="http://www.lib.ucdavis.edu/BWRP/Works/">
    <bibl n="1">
      <author>
        <name>Landon, Letitia Elizabeth</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="LandLVowOf.sgm">
        <title>The Vow of the Peacock</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl n="2">
      <author>
        <name>Compton, Margaret Clephane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="NortMIrene.sgm">
        <title>Irene, a Poem in Six Cantos</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
    <bibl n="3">
      <author>
        <name>Taylor, Jane</name>
      </author>
      <ref target="TaylJEssay.sgm">
        <title>Essays in Rhyme on Morals and Manners</title>
      </ref>
    </bibl>
  </listBibl>
</div>
```

**Note:** The global attributes described here are made part of the attribute definition list declaration of each element by including a reference to the pattern `att.global.attributes` in each such declaration. Some global attributes are made available when certain additional tag sets are selected; these are incorporated into the global attributes by references to the appropriate patterns. When the tag sets in question have not been selected, the patterns in question expand to the empty string.

**Class:** *att.global.linking; att.global.analytic*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.10 Class `att.global.analytic`

provides additional global attributes for associating specific analyses or interpretations with appropriate portions of a text.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**ana** indicates one or more elements containing interpretations of the element on which the *ana* attribute appears.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *att.global*

**Module:** *analysis*

## 1.11 Class `att.global.linking`

defines a set of attributes for hypertext and other linking, which are enabled for all elements when the additional tag set for linking is selected.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**corresp** points to elements that correspond to the current element in some way.

**synch** points to elements that are synchronous with the current element.

**sameAs** points to an element that is the same as the current element.

**copyOf** points to an element of which the current element is a copy.

**next** points to the next element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

**prev** points to the previous element of a virtual aggregate of which the current element is part.

**exclude** points to elements that are in exclusive alternation with the current element.

**select** selects one or more alternants; if one alternant is selected, the ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as resolved. If more than one alternant is selected, the degree of ambiguity or uncertainty is marked as reduced by the number of alternants not selected.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *att.global*

**Module:** linking

## 1.12 Class att.interpLike

provides attributes for elements which represent a formal analysis or interpretation.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**resp** indicates who is responsible for the interpretation.

**type** indicates what kind of phenomenon is being noted in the passage. Sample values include:

**image** (identifies an image in the passage.)

**character** (identifies a character associated with the passage.)

**theme** (identifies a theme in the passage.)

**allusion** (identifies an allusion to another text.)

**inst** points to instances of the analysis or interpretation represented by the current element.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *interp interpGrp span spanGrp*

**Module:** tei

## 1.13 Class att.measured

provides attributes which qualify a measurement of some kind.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**unit** names the units used for the measurement. Suggested values include:

**cm** (centimetres)

**mm** (millimetres)

**in** (inches)

**scope** specifies the applicability of this measurement, where more than one object is being measured. Sample values include:

**all** (measurement applies to all instances.)

**most** (measurement applies to most of the instances inspected.)

**range** (measurement applies to only the specified range of instances.)

**Class:** (none)

**Members:**

**Module:** tei

### 1.14 Class att.measurement

provides attributes to represent a regularized or normalized measurement.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**unit** indicates the units used for the measurement, usually using the standard symbol for the desired units. Suggested values include:

**m** (metre) SI base unit of length

**kg** (kilogram) SI base unit of mass

**s** (second) SI base unit of time

**Hz** (hertz) SI unit of frequency

**Pa** (pascal) SI unit of pressure or stress

$\Omega$  (ohm) SI unit of electric resistance

**L** (litre)  $1\text{ dm}^3$

**t** (tonne)  $10^3\text{ kg}$

**ha** (hectare)  $1\text{ hm}^2$

**A** (ångström)  $10^{-10}\text{ m}$

**mL** (millilitre)

**cm** (centimetre)

**dB** (decibel) see remarks, below

**kbit** (kilobit)  $10^3$  or 1000 bits

**Kibit** (kibibit)  $2^{10}$  or 1024 bits

**kB** (kilobyte)  $10^3$  or 1000 bytes

**KiB** (kibibyte)  $2^{10}$  or 1024 bytes

**MB** (megabyte)  $10^6$  or 1,000,000 bytes

**MiB** (mebibyte)  $2^{20}$  or 1,048,576 bytes

**quantity** specifies the number of the specified units that comprise the measurement

**commodity** indicates the substance that is being measured

**Note:** This attribute class provides a triplet of attributes that may be used either to regularize the values of the measurement being encoded, or to normalize them with respect to a standard measurement system.

Example .1

|   |                                                                                                              |
|---|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1 | <l>So weren't you gonna buy <measure quantity="0.5" unit="gal" commodity="ice cream">half a gallon</measure> |
| 2 | <l>So won't you go and buy <measure quantity="1.893" unit="L" commodity="ice cream">half a gallon</measure>  |

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *measure*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.15 Class att.naming

provides attributes common to elements which refer to named persons, places, organizations etc.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**key** provides a means of locating a full definition for the entity being named such as a database record key or URI.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *affiliation birth bloc country death district education geog geogName name nationality persEvent persName persState persTrait placeName pubPlace region relation residence rs settlement socecStatus*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.16 Class att.personal

(attributes for components of personal names) common attributes for those elements which form part of a personal name.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**type** provides more culture- linguistic- or application- specific information used to categorize this name component.

**full** indicates whether the name component is given in full, as an abbreviation or simply as an initial. Legal values are:

**yes** (the name component is spelled out in full.)

**abb** (the name component is given in an abbreviated form.)

**init** (the name component is indicated only by one initial.)

**sort** specifies the sort order of the name component in relation to others within the personal name.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname*

**Module:** namesdates

## 1.17 Class att.placement

provides attributes for describing where on the source page or object a textual element appears.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**place** Suggested values include:

**infralinear** (below the line)

**margin-bot** (in bottom margin)

**margin-left** (in left margin)

**margin-right** (in right margin)

**margin-top** (in top margin)

**opposite** (on opposite page)

**overleaf** (on the other side of the leaf)

**supralinear** (above the line)

**verso** (on verso of sheet)

**app** (note appears in the apparatus at the foot of the page.)

**end** (note appears at end of chapter or volume.)

**foot** (note appears at foot of page.)

**inline** (note appears as a marked paragraph in the body of the text.)

**interlinear** (note appears between lines of the text; a less precise form of either infralinear or supralinear.)

**inline** (addition is made in a space left in the witness by an earlier scribe.)

**mixed** (one or more of the other values)

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *add note*

**Module:** tei

### 1.18 Class att.pointing

defines a set of attributes used by all elements which point to other elements by means of one or more URI references.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**type** categorizes the pointer in some respect, using any convenient set of categories.

**evaluate** specifies the intended meaning when the target of a pointer is itself a pointer. Legal values are:

**all** (if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then the target of that pointer will be taken, and so on, until an element is found which is not a pointer.)

**one** (if the element pointed to is itself a pointer, then its target (whether a pointer or not) is taken as the target of this pointer.)

**none** (no further evaluation of targets is carried out beyond that needed to find the element specified in the pointer's target.)

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *alt att.pointing.group [altGrp joinGrp linkGrp ]join link ptr ref*

**Module:** linking

### 1.19 Class att.pointing.group

defines a set of attributes common to all elements which enclose groups of pointer elements.

**Class:** *att.pointing*

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing* ]

**domains** optionally specifies the identifiers of the elements within which all elements indicated by the contents of this element lie.

**targFunc** describes the function of each of the values of the targets attribute of the enclosed link, join or alt tags.

**Class:** *att.pointing*

**Members:** *altGrp joinGrp linkGrp*

**Module:** linking

### 1.20 Class att.segLike

provides attributes for elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

**Class:** *att.metrical*

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.metrical* ]

**type** characterizes the type of segment.

**function** characterizes the function of the segment.

**part** specifies whether or not the segment is fragmented by some other structural element, for example a clause which is divided between two or more sentences. Legal values are:

**Y** (the segment is incomplete in some respect)

**N** (either the segment is complete, or no claim is made as to its completeness)

**I** (the initial part of an incomplete segment)

**M** (a medial part of an incomplete segment)

**F** (the final part of an incomplete segment)

**Class:** *att.metrical*

**Members:** *c cl m phr s seg w*

**Module:** tei

## 1.21 Class att.spanning

provides attributes for elements which delimit a span of text by pointing mechanisms rather than by enclosing it.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**spanTo** indicates the end of a span initiated by the element bearing this attribute.

**Note:** The span is defined as running in document order from the start of the content of the pointing element (if any) to the end of the content of the element pointed to by the spanTo attribute (if any). If no value is supplied for the attribute, the assumption is that the span is coextensive with the pointing element.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *index*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.22 Class att.tableDecoration

provides attributes used to decorate rows or cells of a table.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**role** indicates the kind of information held in this cell or in each cell of this row. Suggested values include:

**label** (labelling or descriptive information only.)

**data** (data values.)

**rows** indicates the number of rows occupied by this cell or row.

**cols** indicates the number of columns occupied by this cell or row.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.23 Class att.timed

provides a set of attributes common to those elements which have a duration in time, expressed either absolutely or by reference to an alignment map.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**start** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element begins.

**end** indicates the location within a temporal alignment at which this element ends.

**dur** (duration) indicates the length of this element in time

**Class:** (none)

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.24 Class att.translatable

provides attributes used to indicate the status of a translatable portion of an ODD document.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**version** specifies the version name or number of the source from which the translated version was derived

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *desc gloss*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.25 Class att.typed

provides generic attributes which can be used to classify or subclassify elements in any way.

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**type** characterizes the element in some sense, using any convenient classification scheme or typology.

**subtype** provides a sub-categorization of the element, if needed

**Note:** The typology used may be formally defined using the the <classification> element of the <encodingDesc> within the associated TEI header, or informally as descriptive prose within the <encodingDesc> element.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *ab altIdent anchor biblItem bloc country date day distance district geog listPerson occasion offset persEvent persState persTrait region settlement term time*

**Module:** tei

### 1.26 Class model.addrPart

(address part) groups elements which may constitute a postal or other form of address.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *addrLine model.nameLike [geogName model.nameLike.agent placeName rs ] postBox postCode street*

**Module:** tei

### 1.27 Class model.assertLike

the class of elements concerning which assertions are made, for example as parts of a biographical element.

**Class:** *model.personPart*

**Class:** *model.personPart*

**Members:** *model.persEventLike [birth death persEvent ] model.persStateLike [affiliation education floruit occupation persName persState residence ] model.persTraitLike [age faith langKnowledge nationality persTrait sex socecStatus ]*

**Module:** tei

### 1.28 Class model.biblLike

groups elements containing a bibliographic description.

**Class:** *model.inter; model.common*

**Class:** *model.inter; model.common*

**Members:** *bibl biblFull biblItem biblStruct listPerson*

**Module:** tei

### 1.29 Class model.biblPart

(bibliographic citation part) groups elements which can appear only within bibliographic citation elements.

**Note:** This class is used in defining the content model of the <bibl> and <biblItem> elements.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *distributor edition extent idno model.imprintPart [biblScope pubPlace publisher ] model.respLike [author editor respStmt ] note series*

**Module:** tei

### 1.30 Class model.blockLike

groups segmenting elements.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *seg*

**Module:** tei

## 1.31 Class model.castItemPart

elements used within an entry in a cast list, such as dramatic role or actor's name.

**Class:**

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.32 Class model.catDescPart

groups elements which may be used inside *catDesc* and appear multiple times

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *textDesc*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.33 Class model.choicePart

groups those elements (other than choice itself) which can be used in choice alternation

**Class:**

**Members:** *abbr corr expan orig reg seg sic unclear*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.34 Class model.common

groups common chunk- and inter-level elements.

**Note:** This class defines the set of chunk- and inter-level elements available in all bases; it is used in defining the standard models *chunk.seq* and *macro.specialPara* in the general and mixed bases.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *label model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblItem biblStruct listPerson ] model.divPart [ab l lg p sp ] model.listLike [list listBibl ] model.noteLike [note ] model.oddDecl model.oddRef model.qLike [cit q quote ]*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.35 Class model.complexVal

(complex values) groups elements which express complex feature values in feature structures.

**Class:** *model.featureVal*

**Class:** *model.featureVal*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.36 Class model.dateLike

(dates and date ranges) groups elements containing a date specifications.

**Class:** *model.pPart.data: model.recordingPart*

**Note:** This class allows certain content models to allow either a single date or a date-range element.

**Class:** *model.pPart.data: model.recordingPart*

**Members:** *date*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.37 Class model.datePart

(temporal expression) groups component elements of temporal expressions involving dates and time.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *day distance hour minute month occasion offset second week year*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.38 Class `model.divPart`

groups elements which can occur between, but not within, paragraphs and other chunks.

**Class:** *model.common*

**Note:** Note that this element class does not include members of the *inter* class, which can appear either within or between chunks. Unlike elements of that class, chunks cannot occur within chunks.

**Class:** *model.common*

**Members:** *ab l lg p sp*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.39 Class `model.divWrapper`

(top-of-div elements) groups elements which can occur at the start of any division class element.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *argument byline dateline docAuthor docDate epigraph head opener salute*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.40 Class `model.divWrapper.bottom`

(Bottom-of-division elements) groups elements which can occur at the end of a text division; for example, trailer, byline, etc.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *closer signed trailer*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.41 Class `model.editorialDeclPart`

groups elements which may be used inside *editorialDecl* and appear multiple times

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *correction hyphenation interpretation normalization quotation segmentation stdVals*

**Module:** *header*

### 1.42 Class `model.encodingPart`

groups elements which may be used inside *encodingDesc* and appear multiple times

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *classDecl editorialDecl fsdDecl metDecl projectDesc refsDecl samplingDecl tagsDecl variantEncoding*

**Module:** *header*

### 1.43 Class `model.entryParts.top`

(dictionary high-level elements) groups related parts of a dictionary entry forming a coherent subdivision, for example a particular sense, homonym, etc.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *note*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.44 Class `model.featureVal`

(feature values) groups all elements which represent feature values in feature structures.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *model.complexVal model.singleVal*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.45 Class `model.frontPart`

groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *divGen model.frontPart.drama titlePage*

**Module:** *tei*

1.46 Class *model.frontPart.drama*

groups elements which appear at the level of divisions within front or back matter of performance texts only.

**Class:** *model.frontPart*

**Class:** *model.frontPart*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

1.47 Class *model.gLike*

groups elements which are interspersed with normal text, representing non-Unicode items.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

1.48 Class *model.global*

(global inclusions) groups empty elements which may appear at any point within a TEI text.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *anchor model.global.edit [gap ] model.global.meta [alt altGrp index interp interp-Grp join joinGrp link linkGrp span spanGrp timeline ] model.milestoneLike [cb lb milestone pb ]*

**Module:** *tei*

1.49 Class *model.global.edit*

groups empty elements which perform a specifically editorial function, for example by indicating the start of a span of text added, deleted, or missing in a source.

**Class:** *model.global*

**Note:** Members of this class can appear anywhere within a document, between or within components or phrases.

**Class:** *model.global*

**Members:** *gap*

**Module:** *tei*

1.50 Class *model.global.meta*

groups empty elements which describe the status of other elements, for example by holding groups of links or of abstract interpretations, or by providing indications of certainty etc., and which may appear at any point in a document.

**Class:** *model.global*

**Note:** Encoders may find it convenient to localize all metadata elements, for example to contain them within the same division as the elements that they relate to; or to locate them all to a division of their own. They may however appear at any point in a TEI text.

**Class:** *model.global*

**Members:** *alt altGrp index interp interpGrp join joinGrp link linkGrp span spanGrp timeline*

**Module:** *tei*

1.51 Class *model.glossLike*

groups elements which provide an alternative name, explanation, or description for any markup construct.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *altIdent desc equiv gloss*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.52 Class *model.graphicLike*

(images, formulae, examples, etc.) groups elements containing images, formulae, examples, and similar objects

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:** *binaryObject graphic*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.53 Class *model.headerPart*

groups elements which may be used inside *teiHeader* and appear multiple times

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *encodingDesc profileDesc*

**Module:** *header*

### 1.54 Class *model.hiLike*

groups phrase-level elements related to highlighting.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:** *distinct emph foreign gloss hi mentioned soCalled term title*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.55 Class *model.imprintPart*

groups the bibliographic elements which occur inside imprints.

**Class:** *model.biblPart*

**Class:** *model.biblPart*

**Members:** *biblScope pubPlace publisher*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.56 Class *model.inter*

groups elements of the intermediate (inter-level) class: these elements can occur both within and between paragraphs or other chunk-level elements.

**Note:** This element class contains a subset of those elements which can appear in the unstructured ‘soup’ with which paragraph and other elements at the lowest level of crystal structures are filled: specifically all the elements which can also occur as structural elements in their own right. In prose, this means the elements in this class can appear both within and between paragraphs. This class is thus distinct from the purely phrase-level elements which can appear only within soup, and not on their own; the latter class, in keeping with this metaphor, is called ‘broth’; it is represented by the class *phrase*. Cf. also the class *chunks*.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *label model.biblLike [bibl biblFull biblItem biblStruct listPerson ] model.listLike [list listBibl ] model.noteLike [note ] model.oddDecl model.oddRef model.qLike [cit q quote ] model.stageLike [stage ] text*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.57 Class *model.lLike*

groups elements representing metrical components such as verse lines.

**Class:**

**Members:** *l*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.58 Class model.IPart

groups phrase-level elements which may appear within verse only.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.59 Class model.listLike

groups all list-like elements.

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Members:** *list listBibl*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.60 Class model.measureLike

(numbers, amounts, measurements, etc.) groups elements which denote a number, a quantity, a measurement, or similar piece of text that conveys some numerical meaning

**Class:** *model.pPart.data*

**Class:** *model.pPart.data*

**Members:** *measure num*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.61 Class model.milestoneLike

(reference system elements) groups milestone-style elements used to represent reference systems

**Class:** *model.global*

**Class:** *model.global*

**Members:** *cb lb milestone pb*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.62 Class model.mslItemPart

The class of elements which can appear within a manuscript item description.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *bibl listBibl model.respLike [author editor respStmt ] note q title*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.63 Class model.nameLike

(names of people, places, or organizations, or referring strings) groups those elements which name or refer to a person, place (man-made or geographic), or organization

**Class:** *model.addrPart: model.pPart.data*

**Note:** A superset of the naming elements that may appear in datelines, addresses, statements of responsibility, etc.

**Class:** *model.addrPart: model.pPart.data*

**Members:** *geogName model.nameLike.agent [name orgName persName ] placeName rs*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.64 Class model.nameLike.agent

groups elements which contain names of individuals or corporate bodies.

**Class:** *model.nameLike*

**Note:** This class is used in the content model of elements which reference names of people or organizations.

**Class:** *model.nameLike*

**Members:** *name orgName persName*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.65 Class *model.noteLike*

groups all note-like elements.

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Members:** *note*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.66 Class *model.oddDecl*

(ODD declarations) groups elements which generate declarations in some markup language in ODD documents.

**Class:** *model.common: model.inter*

**Class:** *model.common: model.inter*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.67 Class *model.oddPhr*

(ODD phrase level elements) groups ODD documentation elements which appear at the phrase level, such as identifiers, values, tags, examples etc.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.68 Class *model.oddRef*

(ODD reference class) groups elements which reference declarations in some markup language in ODD documents.

**Class:** *model.common: model.inter*

**Class:** *model.common: model.inter*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.69 Class *model.pLike*

The class of elements which are paragraphs for the purpose of interchange.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *ab p*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.70 Class *model.pLike.front*

(Front matter chunk elements) groups elements which can occur as direct constituents of front matter, when a full title page is not given.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *argument byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epi-graph head titlePart*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.71 Class *model.pPart.data*

groups phrase-level elements containing names, dates, numbers, measures, and similar data.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:** *address model.dateLike [date ] model.measureLike [measure num ] model.nameLike [geogName model.nameLike.agent placeName rs ] model.timeLike [time ]*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.72 Class model.pPart.edit

groups phrase-level elements for simple editorial correction and transcription.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:** *abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.73 Class model.pPart.msdesc

(manuscript description) groups elements for describing manuscripts

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.74 Class model.persEventLike

the class of elements describing specific events in a person's history, for example birth, marriage, appointment... These are not characteristics of an individual, but often cause an individual to gain such characteristics, or to enter a new state.

**Class:** *model.assertLike*

**Class:** *model.assertLike*

**Members:** *birth death persEvent*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.75 Class model.persNamePart

(components of personal names) groups those elements which form part of a personal name.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *addName forename genName nameLink roleName surname*

**Module:** *namesdates*

## 1.76 Class model.persStateLike

the class of elements describing changeable characteristics of a person which have a definite duration, for example occupation, residence, name... These characteristics of an individual are typically a consequence of their own action or that of others.

**Class:** *model.assertLike*

**Class:** *model.assertLike*

**Members:** *affiliation education floruit occupation persName persState residence*

**Module:** *tei*

## 1.77 Class model.persTraitLike

the class of elements describing generally unchanging physical or socially-constructed characteristics of a person, for example hair-colour, ethnicity, sex... These characteristics of an individual are typically independent of their volition or action.

**Class:** *model.assertLike*

**Class:** *model.assertLike*

**Members:** *age faith langKnowledge nationality persTrait sex socecStatus*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.78 Class model.personLike

the class of elements used to provide information about people and their relationships.

**Note:** This class is referenced in the header module, but is not populated unless the namesdates module is loaded.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *listPerson person personGrp relation*

**Module:** tei

### 1.79 Class model.personPart

groups elements which describe characteristics of the people referenced by a text, or participating in a language interaction.

**Note:** This class is used to define the content model for the <person> and <personGrp> elements.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *bibl model.assertLike [model.persEventLike model.persStateLike model.persTraitLike ] note*

**Module:** tei

### 1.80 Class model.phrase

groups those elements which can occur at the level of individual words or phrases.

**Note:** This class of elements can occur only within larger elements of the class inter or chunk. In prose, this means these elements can occur within paragraphs, list items, lines of verse, etc.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *model.graphicLike [binaryObject graphic ] model.hiLike [distinct emph foreign gloss hi mentioned soCalled term title ] model.lPart model.oddPhr model.pPart.data [address model.dateLike model.measureLike model.nameLike model.timeLike ] model.pPart.edit [abbr add choice corr del expan orig reg sic unclear ] model.pPart.msdesc model.ptrLike [ptr ref ] model.segLike [c cl m phr s seg w ]*

**Module:** tei

### 1.81 Class model.physDescPart

specialised descriptive elements constituting the physical description of a manuscript or similar written source.

**Class:**

**Members:**

**Module:** tei

### 1.82 Class model.placeNamePart

(place name components) groups those elements which form part of a place name.

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *bloc country distance district geog offset region settlement*

**Module:** namesdates

### 1.83 Class model.profileDescPart

groups elements which may be used inside profileDesc and appear multiple times

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *langUsage particDesc settingDesc textClass textDesc*

**Module:** header

### 1.84 Class model.ptrLike

groups elements used for purposes of location and reference

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:** *ptr ref*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.85 Class model.publicationStmtPart

(publication statement elements) groups the children of *publicationStmt*

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *address authority availability date distributor idno pubPlace publisher*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.86 Class model.qLike

groups elements related to highlighting which can appear either within or between chunk-level elements.

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Members:** *cit q quote*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.87 Class model.quoteLike

(quote and similar elements) groups elements used to directly contain quotations.

**Class:**

**Members:** *quote*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.88 Class model.recordingPart

(dates and date ranges) groups elements used to describe details of an audio or video recording

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *broadcast equipment model.dateLike [date ] respStmt*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.89 Class model.respLike

groups elements which are used to indicate intellectual responsibility, for example within a bibliographic element.

**Class:** *model.biblPart: model.msItemPart*

**Class:** *model.biblPart: model.msItemPart*

**Members:** *author editor respStmt*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.90 Class model.segLike

groups elements used for arbitrary segmentation.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Note:** The principles on which segmentation is carried out, and any special codes or attribute values used, should be defined explicitly in the `<segmentation>` element of the `<encodingDesc>` within the associated TEI header.

**Class:** *model.phrase*

**Members:** *c cl m phr s seg w*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.91 Class `model.settingPart`

elements used to describe the setting of a linguistic interaction.

**Class:**

**Members:** *activity locale*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.92 Class `model.singleVal`

(atomic values) group elements used to represent atomic feature values in feature structures.

**Class:** *model.featureVal*

**Class:** *model.featureVal*

**Members:**

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.93 Class `model.sourceDescPart`

groups elements which may be used inside `sourceDesc` and appear multiple times

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *recordingStmt scriptStmt*

**Module:** *header*

### 1.94 Class `model.stageLike`

(stage directions) groups elements containing specialized stage directions defined in the additional tag set for performance texts.

**Class:** *model.divPart.stage: model.inter*

**Note:** Stage directions are members of class *inter*: that is, they can appear between or within component-level elements.

**Class:** *model.divPart.stage: model.inter*

**Members:** *stage*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.95 Class `model.textDescPart`

elements used to categorise a text for example in terms of its situational parameters.

**Class:**

**Members:** *channel constitution derivation domain factuality interaction preparedness*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.96 Class `model.timeLike`

(times and time ranges) groups elements containing a time specifications.

**Class:** *model.pPart.data*

**Note:** This class allows certain content models to allow either a single time or a time-range element.

**Class:** *model.pPart.data*

**Members:** *time*

**Module:** *tei*

### 1.97 Class `model.titlepagePart`

(Title page elements) groups those elements which can occur as direct constituents of a title page (`docTitle`, `docAuth`, `docImprint`, `epigraph`, etc.)

**Class:** (none)

**Members:** *binaryObject byline docAuthor docDate docEdition docImprint docTitle epi-graph graphic imprimatur titlePart*

**Module:** *tei*

---

## 2 Elements defined

### 2.1 <TEI>

(TEI document) contains a single TEI-conformant document, comprising a TEI header and a text, either in isolation or as part of a `teiCorpus` element.

Declaration

```
element TEI
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
  ( teiHeader, text )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«`att.global.attribute.xmlspace`»

«`att.global.attribute.xmlid`»

«`att.global.attribute.n`»

«`att.global.attribute.xmllang`»

«`att.global.attribute.rend`»

«`att.global.attribute.xmlbase`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.corresp`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.synch`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.next`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.prev`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.exclude`»

«`att.global.linking.attribute.select`»

«`att.global.analytic.attribute.ana`»

**Example**

```
<TEI>
  <teiHeader>
    <fileDesc>
      <titleStmt>
        <title>The shortest TEI Document Imaginable</title>
      </titleStmt>
      <publicationStmt>
        <p>First published as part of TEI P2.</p>
      </publicationStmt>
      <sourceDesc>
        <p>No source: this is an original work.</p>
      </sourceDesc>
    </fileDesc>
  </teiHeader>
  <text>
    <body>
      <p>This is about the shortest TEI document imaginable.</p>
    </body>
  </text>
</TEI>
```

**Note:** This element is required.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.2 <ab>

(anonymous block) contains any arbitrary component-level unit of text, acting as an anonymous container for phrase or inter level elements analogous to, but without the semantic baggage of, a paragraph.

**Class:** *model.pLike*: *model.divPart*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element ab
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.typed* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

**«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»****«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»****«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»****«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»****«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»****«att.global.linking.attribute.next»****«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»****«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»****«att.global.linking.attribute.select»****«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»****«att.typed.attribute.type»****«att.typed.attribute.subtype»**

**Note:** The <ab> element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any component-level elements in a text for which no other more specific appropriate markup is defined.

**Module:** linking

## 2.3 <abbr>

(abbreviation) contains an abbreviation of any sort.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit: model.choicePart*

**Declaration**

```

element abbr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»****«att.global.attribute.xmlid»****«att.global.attribute.n»****«att.global.attribute.xmllang»**

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<abbr>SPQR</abbr>
```

### Example

```
<choice>
  <abbr>SPQR</abbr>
  <expan>senatus populusque romanorum</expan>
</choice>
```

**Note:** The `<abbr>` tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may transcribe abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If abbreviations are not transcribed directly but *expanded* silently, then the TEI header should so indicate. For a typology of Middle English abbreviations, see A. G. Petty, *English literary hands from Chaucer to Dryden* (London: Edward Arnold, 1977), pp. 22–25.

**Module:** core

## 2.4 <activity>

(activity) contains a brief informal description of what a participant in a language interaction is doing other than speaking, if anything.

**Class:** *model.settingPart*

**Declaration**

```
element activity
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<activity>driving</activity>
```

**Note:** For more fine-grained description of participant activities during a spoken text, the `<event>` element should be used.

**Module:** corpus

## 2.5 <add>

(addition) contains letters, words, or phrases inserted in the text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit*: *att.authorialIntervention*: *att.editLike*: *att.placement*

**Declaration**

```
element add
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.authorialIntervention.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.authorialIntervention.attribute.hand,
att.authorialIntervention.attribute.status,
att.authorialIntervention.attribute.type,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.placement.attribute.place,
macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.authorialInterventionatt.editLikeatt.placement*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.authorialIntervention.attribute.hand»

«att.authorialIntervention.attribute.status»

«att.authorialIntervention.attribute.type»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.placement.attribute.place»

**Note:** The <add> tag should not be used for additions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <supplied> tag should be used.

**Module:** core

## 2.6 <addName>

(additional name) contains an additional name component, such as a nickname, epithet, or alias, or any other descriptive phrase used within a personal name.

**Class:** *model.persNamePart: att.personal*

**Declaration**

```

element addName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.personal.attribute.type,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.personal* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.personal.attribute.type»

«att.personal.attribute.full»

### «att.personal.attribute.sort»

#### Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <addName type="epithet">the Great</addName>
  <roleName>Emperor of Prussia</roleName>
</persName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.7 <addrLine>

contains one line of a postal or other address.

**Class:** *model.addrPart*

#### Declaration

```
element addrLine
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL</addrLine>
  <addrLine>60680 USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

**Note:** Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of address component elements.

**Module:** core

## 2.8 <address>

contains a postal or other address, for example of a publisher, an organization, or an individual.

**Class:** *model.pPart.data: model.publicationStmtPart*

**Declaration**

```
element address
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.global*, ( ( model.addrPart ), model.global* )+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<address>
  <street>via Marsala 24</street>
  <postCode>40126</postCode>
  <name>Bologna</name>
  <name n="I">Italy</name>
</address>
```

### Example

```
<address>
  <addrLine>Computing Center, MC 135</addrLine>
  <addrLine>P.O. Box 6998</addrLine>
  <addrLine>Chicago, IL 60680</addrLine>
  <addrLine>USA</addrLine>
</address>
```

**Note:** If given as running prose, use a consistent format wherever possible, for example separating lines of the address by commas, and including any postal code in the standard form. Addresses may be encoded either as a sequence of lines, or using any sequence of address component elements.

**Module:** core

## 2.9 <affiliation>

(affiliation) contains an informal description of a person's present or past affiliation with some organization, for example an employer or sponsor.

**Class:** *model.persStateLike: att.editLike: att.dataable: att.naming*

**Declaration**

```
element affiliation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
```

```
att.dataable.attribute.to,
att.naming.attribute.key,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.dataableatt.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.from»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.to»  
 «att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<affiliation>Junior project officer for the US
  <name type="org">National Endowment for the Humanities</name>
</affiliation>
<affiliation notAfter="1960-01-01" notBefore="1957-02-28">Paid up
member of the <orgName>Australian Journalists Association</orgName>
</affiliation>
```

**Note:** If included, the name of an organization may be tagged using either the <name> element as above, or the more specific <orgName> element.

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.10 <age>

specifies the age of a person.

**Class:** *model.persTraitLike: att.editLike: att.dataable*

**Declaration**

```
element age
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  attribute value { data.count }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.dataable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataable.attribute.from»

«att.dataable.attribute.to»

### Example

```
<age value="2" notAfter="1986">under 20 in the early eighties</age>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.11 <alt>

(alternation) identifies an alternation or a set of choices among elements or passages.

**Class:** *att.pointing: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```
element alt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.pointing.attribute.type,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  attribute targets { data.pointers },
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  attribute weights { list { data.probability+ } }?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.pointing.attribute.type»

«att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

### Example

```
<alt mode="excl" targets="#we.fun #we.sun" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
```

**Module:** linking

### 2.12 <altGrp>

(alternation group) groups a collection of alt elements and possibly pointers.

**Class:** *att.pointing.group: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```
element altGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.pointing.group.attribute.domains,
  att.pointing.group.attribute.targFunc,
  att.pointing.attribute.type,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  attribute mode { "excl" | "incl" }?,
  ( alt | ptr ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing.group*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.pointing.group.attribute.domains»  
 «att.pointing.group.attribute.targFunc»  
 «att.pointing.attribute.type»  
 «att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

### Example

```

<altGrp mode="excl">
  <alt targets="#dm #lt #bb" weights="0.5 0.25 0.25"/>
  <alt targets="#rl #db" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
</altGrp>

```

### Example

```

<altGrp mode="incl">
  <alt targets="#dm #rl" weights="0.90 0.90"/>
  <alt targets="#lt #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
  <alt targets="#bb #rl" weights="0.5 0.5"/>
  <alt targets="#dm #db" weights="0.10 0.10"/>
  <alt targets="#lt #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
  <alt targets="#bb #db" weights="0.45 0.90"/>
</altGrp>

```

**Note:** Any number of alternations, pointers or extended pointers.

**Module:** linking

### 2.13 <altIdent>

supplies the recommended XML name for an element, class, attribute, etc. in some language.

**Class:** *att.typed: model.glossLike*

**Declaration**

```
element altIdent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

**Example**

```
<altIdent xml:lang="fr">balisageDoc</altIdent>
```

**Note:** All documentation elements in ODD have a canonical name, supplied as the value for their **ident** attribute. The `<altIdent>` element is used to supply an alternative name for the corresponding XML object, perhaps in a different language.

**Module:** core

## 2.14 <analytic>

(analytic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. an article or poem) published within a monograph or journal and not as an independent publication.

**Declaration**

```
element analytic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( author | editor | respStmt | title ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

### «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** May contain titles and statements of responsibility (author, editor, or other), in any order. The <analytic> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an analytic level bibliographic item.

**Module:** core

### 2.15 <anchor>

(anchor point) attaches an identifier to a point within a text, whether or not it corresponds with a textual element.

**Class:** *model.global: att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element anchor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.typed*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```
<s>The anchor is he<anchor xml:id="A234"/>re somewhere.</s>
<s>Help me find it.<ptr target="#A234"/>
</s>
```

**Note:** On this element, the global **xml:id** attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for the point at which this element occurs within a document. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

**Module:** linking

## 2.16 <argument>

A formal list or prose description of the topics addressed by a subdivision of a text.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element argument
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( head, model.global* )?,
    ( macro.component, model.global* )+
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<argument>
  <p>Monte Video -- Maldonado -- Excursion
  to R Polanco -- Lazo and Bolas -- Partridges --
  Absence of Trees -- Deer -- Capybara, or River Hog --
  Tucutuco -- Molothrus, cuckoo-like habits -- Tyrant
  Flycatcher -- Mocking-bird -- Carrion Hawks --
  Tubes formed by Lightning -- House struck</p>
</argument>
```

**Note:** Often contains either a list or a paragraph

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.17 <author>

in a bibliographic reference, contains the name of the author(s), personal or corporate, of a work; the primary statement of responsibility for any bibliographic item.

**Class:** *model.respLike*

**Declaration**

```
element author
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<author>British Broadcasting Corporation</author>
<author>La Fayette, Marie Madeleine Pioche de la Vergne,
    comtesse de (1634-1693)</author>
  
```

**Note:** Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names. In the case of a broadcast, use this element for the name of the company or network which broadcasts the program.

**Module:** core

## 2.18 <authority>

(release authority) supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for making an electronic file available, other than a publisher or distributor.

**Class:** *model.publicationStmtPart*

**Declaration**

```

element authority
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
  
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<authority>John Smith</authority>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.19 <availability>

supplies information about the availability of a text, for example any restrictions on its use or distribution, its copyright status, etc.

**Class:** *model.publicationStmntPart*

**Declaration**

```
element availability
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute status { "free" | "unknown" | "restricted" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available for academic research purposes only.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>In the public domain</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Available under licence from the publishers.</p>
</availability>
```

### Example

```
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Disponible uniquement à des fins de recherche et d'enseignement.</p>
</availability>
<availability status="free">
  <p>Domaine public</p>
</availability>
<availability status="restricted">
  <p>Disponible avec le consentement préalable des éditeurs.</p>
</availability>
```

**Note:** A consistent format should be adopted

**Module:** header

### 2.20 <back>

(back matter) contains any appendixes, etc. following the main part of a text.

**Class:** *att.declaring*

Declaration

```
element back
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.frontPart | model.global | model.divWrapper )*,
    (
      ( div, ( div | model.frontPart | model.global )* )
      | ( div1, ( div1 | model.frontPart | model.global )* )
    )?,
    model.divWrapper.bottom*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

## «att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Example**

```

<back>
<div1 type="appendix">
  <head>The Golden Dream or, the Ingenuous Confession</head>
  <p>To shew the Depravity of human Nature</p>
</div1>
<div1 type="epistle">
  <head>A letter from the Printer, which he desires
    may be inserted</head>
  <salute>Sir.</salute>
  <p>I have done with your Copy, so you may return
    it to the Vatican, if you please</p>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>The Books usually read by the Scholars
    of Mrs Two-Shoes are these and are sold at Mr
    Newbery's at the Bible and Sun in St Paul's
    Church-yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">The Christmas Box, Price 1d.</item>
    <item n="2">The History of Giles Gingerbread, 1d.</item>
    <item n="42">A Curious Collection of Travels, selected
      from the Writers of all Nations, 10 Vol, Pr. bound 1l.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
<div1 type="advert">
  <head>
    <hi rend="center">By the KING's Royal Patent,</hi>
    Are sold by J. NEWBERY, at the Bible and Sun in
    St. Paul's Church-Yard.</head>
  <list>
    <item n="1">Dr. James's Powders for Fevers, the
      Small-Pox, Measles, Colds, &c. 2s. 6d</item>
    <item n="2">Dr. Hooper's Female Pills, 1s.</item>
  </list>
</div1>
</back>

```

**Note:** The content model of back matter is identical to that of front matter, reflecting the facts of cultural history.

**Module:** textstructure

**2.21 <bibl>**

(bibliographic citation) contains a loosely-structured bibliographic citation of which the sub-components may or may not be explicitly tagged.

**Class:** *model.biblLike*: *att.declarable*: *model.msItemPart*: *model.personPart*

**Declaration**

```

element bibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,

```

```

att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.declarable.attribute.default,
(
  text
  | model.gLike      | model.hiLike      | model.pPart.data      | model.pPart.edit      | model.segLike      | mo
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```

<bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to Literature in
English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>

```

### Example

```

<bibl>
  <title level="a">The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>.
  In <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>, <title>The Penny Histories</title>.
  <publisher>OUP</publisher>
  <date>1968</date>.
</bibl>

```

**Note:** Contains phrase-level elements, together with any combination of elements from the biblPart class

**Module:** core

## 2.22 <biblFull>

contains a fully-structured bibliographic citation, in which all components of the TEI file description are present.

**Class:** *model.biblLike: att.declarable*

**Declaration**

```

element biblFull
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( macro.fileDescPart, sourceDesc* )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Example**

```
<biblFull>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in English:
      women writers from the middle ages to the present</title>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  </titleStmt>
  <editionStmt>
    <edition>UK edition</edition>
  </editionStmt>
  <extent>1231 pp</extent>
  <publicationStmt>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <p>No source: this is an original work</p>
  </sourceDesc>
</biblFull>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.23 <biblItem>

(bibliographic citation) contains a bibliographic citation in which only bibliographic subelements appear.

**Class:** *model.biblLike: att.declarable: att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element biblItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute form { data.word }?,
  attribute status { text }?,
  attribute role { text }?,
  (
    title      | biblItem      | imprint      | model.nameLike      | model.biblPart      | model.dateLike      )+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarableatt.typed* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.declarable.attribute.default»  
 «att.typed.attribute.type»  
 «att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```

<biblItem>
  <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
  <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
  <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
  <title level="m">The Feminist Companion to Literature in English</title>
  <title level="m" type="subordinate">Women Writers from the
    Middle Ages to the Present</title>
  <edition>first edition</edition>
  <imprint>
    <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
    <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
    <date>1990</date>
  </imprint>
</biblItem>

```

### Example

```

<biblItem>
  <title level="a">Changes in physical examination caused by use
    of spinal immobilization</title>
  <author>March, Juan A. MD</author>
  <author>Ausband, Stephen C. MD</author>
  <author>Brown, Lawrence H. EMT-P</author>
  <biblScope type="pages">421-424</biblScope>
  <biblItem role="host">
    <title level="j">Prehospital Emergency Care</title>
    <biblScope type="volume">6</biblScope>
    <biblScope type="issue">4</biblScope>
    <date>October/December 2002</date>
    <publisher>Hanley & Belfus</publisher>
    <editor>Menegazzi, James J. PhD</editor>
  </biblItem>
</biblItem>

```

**Module:** core

### 2.24 <biblScope>

(scope of citation) defines the scope of a bibliographic reference, for example as a list of pagenumbers, or a named subdivision of a larger work.

**Class:** *model.imprintPart*

**Declaration**

```
element biblScope
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<biblScope>pp 12-34</biblScope>
<biblScope type="vol">II</biblScope>
<biblScope type="pp">12</biblScope>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.25 <biblStruct>

(structured bibliographic citation) contains a structured bibliographic citation, in which only bibliographic subelements appear and in a specified order.

**Class:** *model.biblLike: att.declarable*

**Declaration**

```

element biblStruct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( analytic*, ( monogr, series* )+, ( model.noteLike | idno )* )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Example**

```
<biblStruct>
  <monogr>
    <author>Blain, Virginia</author>
    <author>Clements, Patricia</author>
    <author>Grundy, Isobel</author>
    <title>The Feminist Companion to Literature in
      English: women writers from the middle ages
      to the present</title>
    <edition>first edition</edition>
    <imprint>
      <publisher>Yale University Press</publisher>
      <pubPlace>New Haven and London</pubPlace>
      <date>1990</date>
    </imprint>
  </monogr>
</biblStruct>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.26 <binaryObject>

provides encoded binary data representing an inline graphic or other object.

**Class:** *model.graphicLike: model.titlepagePart*

**Declaration**

```
element binaryObject
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute width { data.outputMeasurement }?,
  attribute height { data.outputMeasurement }?,
  attribute scale { data.numeric }?,
  attribute mimeType { data.word }?,
  attribute encoding { data.words }?,
  text
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<binaryObject mimeType="image/gif">
R0lGODdhMAAwAPAAAAAAP///ywAAAAAMAAwAAAC8IyPqcvt3wCcDkiLc7C0qwy
GHhSWpJQu5yqmCYsapyuvUULvONmOZtfzgFzByTB10QgxOR0TqBQejhRNzOfkVJ
+5YiUqrXF5Y5lKh/DeuNcP5yLWGsEbtLiOSpa/TPg7JpJHxyendzWTBfX0cxOnK
PjgBzi4diinWGdkF8kjdfnycQZXZeYGejmJlZeG19i2icVqaNVailT6F5iJ90m6
mvuTS4OK05M0vDk0Q4XUtwvKOzrcd3iq9uisF81MlOIcR7lEewwcLp7tuNNkM3u
Nna3F2JQFo97Vriy/Xl4/f1cf5VWzXyym7PH hxx4dbgYKAAA7</binaryObject>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.27 <birth>

(Birth details) contains information about a person's birth, such as its date and place.

**Class:** *model.persEventLike*: *att.editLike*: *att.dataable*: *att.naming*

**Declaration**

```
element birth
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute date { data.temporal }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLike**att.dataable**att.naming*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
«att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
«att.global.attribute.n»  
«att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
«att.global.attribute.rend»  
«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
«att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
«att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
«att.dateable.attribute.notBefore»  
«att.dateable.attribute.notAfter»  
«att.dateable.attribute.from»  
«att.dateable.attribute.to»  
«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<birth>Before 1920, Midlands region.</birth>
```

### Example

```
<birth date="1960-12-10">In a small cottage near  
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,  
early in the morning of <date>10 Dec 1960</date>  
</birth>
```

**Note:** Dates and place names, if included in the content of this element, should in general be tagged using the `<date>` and `<name>` elements respectively. If the additional tagset for Names and Dates is in use, the more specific elements defined by that tagset may be used as an alternative.

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.28 &lt;bloc&gt;

(bloc) contains the name of a geo-political unit consisting of one or more nation states or countries.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart*: *att.naming*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```

element bloc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming**att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

### «att.typed.attribute.subtype»

#### Example

```
<bloc type="union">the European Union</bloc>
<bloc type="continent">Africa</bloc>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.29 <body>

(text body) contains the whole body of a single unitary text, excluding any front or back matter.

**Class:** *att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element body
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( macro.component ), model.global* )+,
        (
          ( divGen, model.global* )*,
          (
            ( div, ( div | divGen | model.global )* )
            | ( div0, ( div0 | divGen | model.global )* )
            | ( div1, ( div1 | divGen | model.global )* )
          )?
        )
      )
    )
    | (
      ( divGen, model.global* )*,
      (
        ( div, ( div | divGen | model.global )* )
        | ( div0, ( div0 | divGen | model.global )* )
        | ( div1, ( div1 | divGen | model.global )* )
      )
    )
  ),
  model.divWrapper.bottom*
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring*]

### «att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

### «att.global.attribute.xmlid»

### «att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.30 <broadcast>

(broadcast) describes a broadcast used as the source of a spoken text.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.recordingPart*

**Declaration**

```

element broadcast
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.biblLike | recording )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<broadcast>
  <bibl>
    <author>Radio Trent</author>
    <title>Gone Tomorrow</title>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Presenter</resp>
      <name>Tim Maby</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Producer</resp>
      <name>Mary Kerr</name>
    </respStmt>
    <date value="1989-06-12T12:30:00">12 June 89, 1230 pm</date>
  </bibl>
</broadcast>
```

### Example

```
<broadcast>
  <bibl>
    <author>Radio Trent</author>
    <title>Gone Tomorrow</title>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Présentateur</resp>
      <name>Tim Maby</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Producteur</resp>
      <name>Mary Kerr</name>
    </respStmt>
    <date value="1989-06-12T12:30:00">12 juin 1989, 12 h 30 mn</date>
  </bibl>
</broadcast>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.31 <byline>

contains the primary statement of responsibility given for a work on its title page or at the head or end of the work.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper: model.titlepagePart: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element byline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | docAuthor | model.global ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<byline>Written by a CITIZEN who continued all the
while in London. Never made public before.</byline>
```

### Example

```
<byline>Written from her own MEMORANDUMS</byline>
```

### Example

```
<byline>By George Jones, Political Editor, in Washington</byline>
```

### Example

```
<dateline>Zagreb:</dateline>
<byline>de notre envoyé spécial.</byline>
```

### Example

```
<byline>BY
<docAuthor>THOMAS PHILIPOTT,</docAuthor>
Master of Arts,
(Sometimes)
Of Clare-Hall in Cambridge.</byline>
```

**Note:** The byline on a title page may include either the name or a description for the document's author. Where the name is included, it may optionally be tagged using the `<docAuthor>` element.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.32 <c>

(character) represents a character.

**Class:** *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*

**Declaration**

```
element c
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.segLike.attribute.type,
  att.segLike.attribute.function,
  att.segLike.attribute.part,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.segLike.attribute.type»  
 «att.segLike.attribute.function»  
 «att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```
<c type="punctuation">?</c>
```

**Note:** Character data. Should only contain a single character or an entity that represents a single character.

**Module:** analysis

## 2.33 <cRefPattern>

(defines how to convert a canonical reference into a URI) specifies an expression and replacement pattern for transforming a canonical reference into a URI

### Declaration

```

element cRefPattern
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute matchPattern { data.pattern },
  attribute replacementPattern { text },
  model.pLike*
}
  
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

#### Example

```
<cRefPattern matchPattern="([1-9A-Za-z]+\s+([0-9]+):([0-9]+)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//div[@type='bo
```

**Note:** The result of the substitution may be either an absolute or a relative URI reference. In the latter case it is combined with the value of **xml:base** in force at the place where the **cRef** attribute occurs to form an absolute URI in the usual manner as prescribed by XML Base.

**Module:** header

### 2.34 <catDesc>

(category description) describes some category within a taxonomy or text typology, either in the form of a brief prose description or in terms of the situational parameters used by the TEI formal textDesc.

#### Declaration

```
element catDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( text | model.phrase | model.catDescPart ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
```

### Example

```
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

### Example

```
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

### Example

```
<catDesc>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
</catDesc>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.35 <catRef>

(category reference) specifies one or more defined categories within some taxonomy or text typology.

**Declaration**

```
element catRef
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute target { data.pointers },
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<catRef target="#ba #c1" scheme="#s1"/>
```

**Note:** The scheme attribute need be supplied only if more than one taxonomy has been declared

**Module:** header

## 2.36 <category>

(category) contains an individual descriptive category, possibly nested within a superordinate category, within a user-defined taxonomy.

### Declaration

```
element category
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( ( catDesc | model.glossLike ), category* )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<category xml:id="b1">
  <catDesc>Prose reportage</catDesc>
</category>
```

### Example

```
<category xml:id="b2-zh">
  <catDesc>Prose</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11-zh">
    <catDesc>reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12-zh">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

### Example

```
<category xml:id="b2-fr">
  <catDesc>Prose</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11-fr">
    <catDesc>reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12-fr">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

### Example

```
<category xml:id="b2">
  <catDesc>Prose</catDesc>
  <category xml:id="b11">
    <catDesc>reportage</catDesc>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="b12">
    <catDesc>fiction</catDesc>
  </category>
</category>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.37 <cb>

(column break) marks the boundary between one column of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

**Class:** *model.milestoneLike*

**Declaration**

```
element cb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
```

```

    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
    att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
    att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
    att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
    att.global.linking.attribute.next,
    att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
    att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
    att.global.linking.attribute.select,
    att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
    attribute ed { data.code }?,
    empty
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** On this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the column which follows the point of insertion of this <cb> element. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with column breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the column in the whole text, or whether columns are numbered within the page. By convention, the <cb> element is placed at the head of the column to which it refers.

**Module:** core

### 2.38 <change>

summarizes a particular change or correction made to a particular version of an electronic text which is shared between several researchers.

**Class:** *att.ascribed*

**Declaration**

```
element change
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.ascribed.attribute.who,
  attribute date { data.temporal }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.ascribed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.ascribed.attribute.who»

**Example**

```
<change n="P2.2" date="1991-12-21" who="#LB">Added examples to section 3</change>
<change date="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">Deleted chapter 10</change>
```

### Example

```
<change n="P2.2" date="1991-12-21" who="#LB">
  Exemples ajoutés à la section 3
</change>
<change date="1991-11-11" who="#MSM">
  Suppression du chapitre 10
</change>
```

**Note:** Changes should be recorded in a consistent order, for example with the most recent first.

**Module:** header

## 2.39 <channel>

(primary channel) describes the medium or channel by which a text is delivered or experienced. For a written text, this might be print, manuscript, e-mail, etc.; for a spoken one, radio, telephone, face-to-face, etc.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```
element channel
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute mode { "s" | "w" | "sw" | "ws" | "m" | "x" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<channel mode="s">face-to-face conversation</channel>
```

Module: corpus

### 2.40 <choice>

groups a number of alternative encodings for the same point in a text.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit*

**Declaration**

```
element choice
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.choicePart | choice ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

An American encoding of Gulliver's Travels which retains the British spelling but also provides a version regularized to American spelling might be encoded as follows.

```
<p>Lastly, That, upon his solemn oath to observe all the above
  articles, the said man-mountain shall have a daily allowance of
  meat and drink sufficient for the support of <choice>
  <sic>1724</sic>
  <corr>1728</corr>
</choice> of our subjects,
  with free access to our royal person, and other marks of our
  <choice>
  <orig>favour</orig>
  <reg>favor</reg>
</choice>.</p>
```

**Note:** Because the children of a `<choice>` element all represent alternative ways of encoding the same sequence, it is natural to think of them as mutually exclusive. However, there may be cases where a full representation of a text requires the alternative encodings to be considered as parallel. Note also that `<choice>` elements may self-nest. For a specialized version of `<choice>` for encoding multiple witnesses of a single source, see section «TCAPLL».

**Module:** core

## 2.41 <cit>

A quotation from some other document, together with a bibliographic reference to its source.

**Class:** *model.qLike*

**Declaration**

```
element cit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.quoteLike | model.biblLike | model.ptrLike | model.global )+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<cit>
  <quote>and the breath of the whale is frequently attended with such
    an insupportable smell, as to bring on disorder of the
    brain.</quote>
  <bibl>Ulloa's South America</bibl>
</cit>
```

**Note:** Must contain a single quote and a single bibliographic reference in either order

**Module:** core

## 2.42 <cl>

(clause) represents a grammatical clause.

**Class:** *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*

**Declaration**

```
element cl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.segLike.attribute.type,
```

```
att.segLike.attribute.function,
att.segLike.attribute.part,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.segLike.attribute.type»

«att.segLike.attribute.function»

«att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```
<cl type="relative" function="clause modifier">Which frightened
  both the heroes so,<cl>They quite forgot their quarrel.</cl>
</cl>
```

**Module:** analysis

## 2.43 <classCode>

(classCode) contains the classification code used for this text in some standard classification system.

**Declaration**

```
element classCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute scheme { data.pointer },
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<classCode scheme="#DDC12">410</classCode>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.44 <classDecl>

(classification declarations) contains one or more taxonomies defining any classificatory codes used elsewhere in the text.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart*

Declaration

```
element classDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
```

```

    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
    att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
    att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
    att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
    att.global.linking.attribute.next,
    att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
    att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
    att.global.linking.attribute.select,
    att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
    taxonomy+
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Module:** header

## 2.45 <closer>

groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a final group at the end of a division, especially of a letter.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper.bottom*

**Declaration**

```

element closer
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
}

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
(  
  text  
  | model.gLike      | signed      | dateline      | salute      | model.phrase      | model.global      ) *  
)
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<div type="letter">  
  <p>perhaps you will favour me with a sight  
    of it when convenient.</p>  
  <closer>  
    <salute>I remain, &c. &c.</salute>  
    <signed>H. Colburn</signed>  
  </closer>  
</div>
```

### Example

```
<div type="chapter">  
  <p>and his heart was going like mad and yes  
    I said yes I will Yes.</p>  
  <closer>  
    <dateline>  
      <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>  
      <date>1914-1921</date>  
    </dateline>  
  </closer>  
</div>
```

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.46 <constitution>

describes the internal composition of a text or text sample, for example as fragmentary, complete, etc.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```
element constitution
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { "single" | "composite" | "frags" | "unknown" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<constitution type="frags">Prologues only.</constitution>
```

**Note:** The function of this element seems to overlap with both the ORG attribute on DIVs and the samplingDecl in the encodingDesc.

**Module:** corpus

### 2.47 <corr>

(correction) contains the correct form of a passage apparently erroneous in the copy text.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit*; *model.choicePart*: *att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```
element corr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

## «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

### Example

If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been corrected, <corr> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now --
how <corr>can we</corr> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

### Example

It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the correction, and, using the <choice> and <sic> elements, to provide a correct reading:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past now --
how <choice>
  <sic>we can</sic>
  <corr resp="#MSM">can we</corr>
</choice> prove or
disprove anyone's theories?
```

**Module:** core

## 2.48 <correction>

(correction principles) states how and under what circumstances corrections have been made in the text.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

**Declaration**

```
element correction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  attribute status { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
  attribute method { "silent" | "tags" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<correction>
  <p>Errors in transcription controlled by using the
  WordPerfect spelling checker, with a user defined dictionary of 500
  extra words taken from Chambers Twentieth Century Dictionary.</p>
</correction>
```

### Example

```
<correction>
  <p>Les erreurs de transcription ont été corrigées au moyen du correcteur orthographique de WordPerfect, a
  mots supplémentaires issus du Chambers Twentieth Century Dictionary.</p>
</correction>
```

**Note:** May be used to note the results of proof reading the text against its original, indicating (for example) whether discrepancies have been silently rectified, or recorded using the editorial tags described in section «COED».

**Module:** header

## 2.49 <country>

(country) contains the name of a geo-political unit, such as a nation, country, colony, or commonwealth, larger than or administratively superior to a region and smaller than a bloc.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart*: *att.naming*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element country
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.naming.attribute.key,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
attribute reg { data.code }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming**att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```
<country reg="DK">Denmark</country>
```

**Note:** To represent country names not included in ISO 3166, the standard suggests the use of a number of ‘user assigned code elements’, such as the letters AA, QM to QZ, XA to XZ, and ZZ, or the numbers 900 to 999.

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.50 <creation>

contains information about the creation of a text.

Declaration

```
element creation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<creation>
  <date>Before 1987</date>
</creation>
```

**Example**

```
<creation>
  <date value="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

### Example

```
<creation>
  <date>Avant 1987</date>
</creation>
```

### Example

```
<creation>
  <date value="1988-07-10">10 juillet 1988</date>
</creation>
```

### Example

```
<creation>
  <date value="1988-07-10">10 July 1988</date>
</creation>
```

**Note:** Character data and phrase-level elements. The `<creation>` element may be used to record details of a text's creation, e.g. the date and place it was composed, if these are of interest; it should not be confused with the `<publicationStmt>` element, which records date and place of publication.

**Module:** header

## 2.51 `<date>`

contains a date in any format.

**Class:** *model.dateLike: model.publicationStmtPart: att.datePart: att.editLike: att.dataable: att.typed*  
**Declaration**

```
element date
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
```

```
attribute calendar { data.enumerated }?,  
attribute precision { data.certainty }?,  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.datePart | model.phrase | model.global ) *  
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart**att.editLike**att.dataTable**att.typed*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.dataTable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataTable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataTable.attribute.from»

«att.dataTable.attribute.to»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

**Example**

```
<date value="1980-02" precision="low">early February 1980</date>
```

### Example

```
Given on the <date value="1977-06-12">Twelfth Day of June  
in the Year of Our Lord One Thousand Nine Hundred and  
Seventy-seven of the Republic the Two Hundredth and first  
and of the University the Eighty-Sixth.</date>
```

### Example

```
<date value="1990-09">September 1990</date>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.52 <dateline>

contains a brief description of the place, date, time, etc. of production of a letter, newspaper story, or other work, prefixed or suffixed to it as a kind of heading or trailer.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper*

**Declaration**

```
element dateline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
```

### Example

```
<div type="chapter">
  <p>and his heart was going like mad and yes
    I said yes I will Yes.</p>
</div>
<dateline>
  <name type="place">Trieste-Zürich-Paris,</name>
  <date>1914-1921</date>
</dateline>
</div>
```

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.53 <day>

(day) the day component of a structured date.

**Class:** *model.datePart*: *att.datePart*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element day
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart**att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.datePart.attribute.value»  
 «att.datePart.attribute.dur»  
 «att.typed.attribute.type»  
 «att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```

<date value="1993-05-14">
  <day type="name">Friday</day>,
  <day type="number">14</day>
  <month>May</month>
  <year>1993</year>
</date>

```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.54 <death>

contains information about a person's death, such as its date and place.

**Class:** *model.persEventLike*: *att.editLike*: *att.dataable*: *att.naming*

**Declaration**

```

element death
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
att.editLike.attribute.cert,  
att.editLike.attribute.resp,  
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,  
att.datable.attribute.notBefore,  
att.datable.attribute.notAfter,  
att.datable.attribute.from,  
att.datable.attribute.to,  
att.naming.attribute.key,  
attribute date { data.temporal }?,  
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.datableatt.naming*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.datable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.datable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.datable.attribute.from»

«att.datable.attribute.to»

## «att.naming.attribute.key»

**Example**

```
<death date="1902-10-01"/>
```

**Example**

```
<death date="1960-12-10">Passed away near
<name type="place">Aix-la-Chapelle</name>,
after suffering from cerebral palsy.
</death>
```

**Note:** Dates and place names, if included in the content of this element, should in general be tagged using the `<date>` and `<name>` elements respectively. If the additional tagset for Names and Dates is in use, the more specific elements defined by that tagset may be used as an alternative.

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.55 &lt;del&gt;

(deletion) contains a letter, word or passage deleted, marked as deleted, or otherwise indicated as superfluous or spurious in the copy text by an author, scribe, annotator, or corrector.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit: att.editLike: att.authorialIntervention*

**Declaration**

```
element del
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.authorialIntervention.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.authorialIntervention.attribute.hand,
  att.authorialIntervention.attribute.status,
  att.authorialIntervention.attribute.type,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.authorialIntervention* ]

## «att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

## «att.global.attribute.xmlid»

## «att.global.attribute.n»

## «att.global.attribute.xmllang»

## «att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
 «att.authorialIntervention.attribute.hand»  
 «att.authorialIntervention.attribute.status»  
 «att.authorialIntervention.attribute.type»

### Example

```

<l>
  <del rend="overtyped">Mein</del> Frisch
  <del rend="overstrike" type="primary">schwebt</del> weht der Wind</l>
  
```

**Note:** Cf. <gap>. Degrees of uncertainty over what can still be read may be indicated by use of the <certainty> element (see «CE»). This element should be used for deletion of shorter sequences of text, typically single words or phrases. The <delSpan> element should be used for longer sequences of text, for those containing structural subdivisions, and for those containing overlapping additions and deletions. The text deleted must be at least partially legible, in order for the encoder to be able to transcribe it. If it is not legible at all, the <del> tag should not be used. Rather, the <gap> tag should be employed to signal that text cannot be transcribed, with the value of the **reason** attribute giving the cause for the omission from the transcription as deletion. If it is not fully legible, the <unclear> element (available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources) should be used to signal the areas of text which cannot be read with confidence. See further sections «PHOM» and, for the close association of the <del> tag with the <gap>, <damage>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements (the latter three tags available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources), «PHCOMB». The <del> tag should not be used for deletions made by editors or encoders. In these cases, either the <corr> tag or the <gap> tag should be used.

**Module:** core

## 2.56 &lt;derivation&gt;

describes the nature and extent of originality of this text.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```

element derivation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<derivation type="original"/>
```

**Note:** For derivative texts, details of the ancestor may be included in the source description.

**Module:** corpus

### 2.57 <desc>

(description) contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, or attribute value.

**Class:** *model.glossLike: att.translatable*

**Declaration**

```
element desc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.translatable.attribute.version,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.translatable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.translatable.attribute.version»

**Example**

<desc>contains a brief description of the purpose and application for an element, attribute, attribute value, class, or entity.</desc>

**Note:** TEI convention requires that this be expressed as a finite clause, beginning with an active verb.

**Module:** core

## 2.58 <distance>

(distance) that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the distance between the place or time denoted by it and the place or time referred to within it.

**Class:** *model.datePart*: *att.datePart*: *model.placeNamePart*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element distance
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute exact { "true" | "false" | "unknown" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart**att.typed* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.corresp*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.synch*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.next*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.prev*»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```
<placeName>
  <distance>two miles</distance>
  <offset>north east of</offset>
  <placeName>Manchester</placeName>
</placeName>
```

### Example

```
<date>
  <distance dur="P14D">a fortnight</distance>
  <offset>after</offset>
  <occasion>Michaelmas</occasion>
</date>
```

### Example

```
<time>
  <distance>20 minutes</distance>
  <offset>before</offset>
  <hour>noon</hour>.
</time>
```

**Note:** This is a specialized form of measure, used only within relative temporal and spatial expressions.

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.59 <distinct>

(distinct) identifies any word or phrase which is regarded as linguistically distinct, for example as archaic, technical, dialectal, non-preferred, etc., or as forming part of a sublanguage.

**Class:** *model.hiLike*

**Declaration**

```
element distinct
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
attribute time { data.code }?,
attribute space { data.code }?,
attribute social { data.code }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

Next morning a boy in that dormitory confided to his
bosom friend, a <distinct type="ps_slang">fag</distinct> of
Macrea's, that there was trouble in their midst which
King <distinct type="archaic">would fain</distinct> keep
secret.

```

**Module:** core

## 2.60 <distributor>

supplies the name of a person or other agency responsible for the distribution of a text.

**Class:** *model.biblPart*; *model.publicationStmtPart*

**Declaration**

```

element distributor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>  
<distributor>Redwood and Burn Ltd</distributor>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.61 <district>

contains the name of any kind of subdivision of a settlement, such as a parish, ward, or other administrative or geographic unit.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart*: *att.naming*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element district  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.naming.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,  
}
```

```

att.global.attribute.n,
att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.naming.attribute.key,
att.typed.attribute.type,
att.typed.attribute.subtype,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming* *att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```

<placeName>
  <district type="ward">Jericho</district>
  <settlement>Oxford</settlement>
</placeName>

```

### Example

```
<placeName>
  <district type="area">South Side</district>
  <settlement>Chicago</settlement>
</placeName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.62 <div>

(text division) contains a subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike*: *att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element div
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      (
        ( ( ( div | divGen ), model.global* )+ )
        | (
            ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
            ( ( div | divGen ), model.global* )*
          )
      ),
      ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
    )?
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLike**att.declaring* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```
<body>
  <div type="part">
    <head>Fallacies of Authority</head>
    <p>The subject of which is Authority in various shapes, and the
      object, to repress all exercise of the reasoning faculty.</p>
    <div n="1" type="chapter">
      <head>The Nature of Authority</head>
      <p>With reference to any proposed measures having for their
        object the greatest happiness of the greatest number....</p>
      <div n="1.1" type="section">
        <head>Analysis of Authority</head>
        <p>What on any given occasion is the legitimate weight or
          influence to be attached to authority ...</p>
      </div>
      <div n="1.2" type="section">
        <head>Appeal to Authority, in What Cases Fallacious.</head>
        <p>Reference to authority is open to the charge of fallacy
          when...</p>
      </div>
    </div>
  </div>
</body>
```

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.63 <div0>

(level-0 text division) contains the largest possible subdivision of the body of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike*: *att.declaring*

Declaration

```
element div0
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( div1 | divGen ), model.global* )+
      | (
          ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
          ( ( div1 | divGen ), model.global* )*
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLikeatt.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```
<div0 n="I" xml:id="LEVI" type="part">
  <head>Part I: Of Man</head>
  <div1 n="1" xml:id="LEVI1" type="chapter">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense</head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man...</p>
  </div1>
</div0>
<div0 n="II" xml:id="LEVII" type="part">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
</div0>
```

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.64 <div1>

(level-1 text division) contains a first-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text (the largest, if div0 is not used, the second largest if it is).

**Class:** *att.divLike: att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element div1
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( div2 | divGen ), model.global* )+
      | (
          ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
          ( ( div2 | divGen ), model.global* )*
        )
    )
  )
}
```

```

    ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* ) *
  )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLike* *att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```

<div1 xml:id="levi" n="I" type="part">
  <head>Part I: Of Man</head>
  <div2 xml:id="levi1" n="1" type="chapter">
    <head>Chap. I. Of Sense</head>
    <p>Concerning the Thoughts of man...</p>
  </div2>
</div1>
<div1 xml:id="levii" n="II" type="part">
  <head>Part II: Of Common-Wealth</head>
</div1>

```

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.65 &lt;div2&gt;

(level-2 text division) contains a second-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike: att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```

element div2
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( div3 | divGen ), model.global* )+
      | (
        ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
        ( ( div3 | divGen ), model.global* )*
      )
    ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLikeatt.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```
<div1 n="2" type="part">
  <head>The Second Partition:
    The Cure of Melancholy</head>
  <div2 n="2.1" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.1.1" type="member">
      <div4 n="2.1.1.1" type="subsection">
        <head>Unlawful Cures rejected.</head>
        <p>Inveterate melancholy, howsoever it may seem to
          be a continue, inexorable disease, hard to be
          cured, accompanying them to their graves most part
          (as <ref target="#a">Montanus</ref> observes), yet many
          times it may be helped...
        </p>
      </div4>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.2" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
      <p/>
    </div3>
  </div2>
  <div2 n="2.3" type="section">
    <div3 n="2.3.1" type="member">
      <head>Sect. III. Memb. I</head>
      <p/>
    </div3>
  </div2>
</div1>
```

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.66 <div3>

(level-3 text division) contains a third-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike*: *att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element div3
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
```

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.divLike.attribute.type,
att.divLike.attribute.org,
att.divLike.attribute.sample,
att.divLike.attribute.part,
att.declaring.attribute.decls,
(
  ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
  (
    ( ( div4 | divGen ), model.global* )+
    | (
      ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
      ( ( div4 | divGen ), model.global* )*
    )
  ),
  ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
)
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLike**att.declaring*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```
<div2 n="2.2" type="section">
  <div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
    <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.2" type="member">
    <head>Memb. II
      Retention and Evacuation rectified.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
  <div3 n="2.2.3" type="member">
    <head>Memb. III
      Ayr rectified. With a digression of the Ayr.</head>
    <p/>
  </div3>
</div2>
```

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.67 <div4>

(level-4 text division) contains a fourth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike*: *att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element div4
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( div5 | divGen ), model.global* )+
      | (
          ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
          ( ( div5 | divGen ), model.global* )*
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLikeatt.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.divLike.attribute.type»  
 «att.divLike.attribute.org»  
 «att.divLike.attribute.sample»  
 «att.divLike.attribute.part»  
 «att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```

<div3 n="2.2.1" type="member">
  <head>Sect. II. Memb. I</head>
  <div4 n="2.2.1.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect I. -- Dyet rectified in substance.</head>
    <p>Diet, <term xml:lang="grc">diaitotiku</term>,
      <term xml:lang="la">victus</term> or living
    </p>
  </div4>
  <div4 n="2.2.2.1" type="subsection">
    <head>Subsect II. -- Dyet rectified in quantity.</head>
    <p>Man alone, saith Cardan, eates and drinks without
      appetite, and useth all his pleasures without necessity</p>
  </div4>
</div3>

```

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.68 <div5>

(level-5 text division) contains a fifth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike: att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element div5
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( div6 | divGen ), model.global* )+
      | (
        ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
        ( ( div6 | divGen ), model.global* )*
      )
    ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLikeatt.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.69 <div6>

(level-6 text division) contains a sixth-level subdivision of the front, body, or back of a text.

**Class:** *att.divLike*: *att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```

element div6
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
    (
      ( ( div7 | divGen ), model.global* )+
      | (
          ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
          ( ( div7 | divGen ), model.global* )*
        )
    ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLike**att.declaring*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, possibly grouped into lower subdivisions.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.70 <div7>

(level-7 text division) contains the smallest possible subdivision of the front, body or back of a text, larger than a paragraph.

**Class:** *att.divLike*: *att.declaring*

Declaration

```
element div7
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.divLike.attribute.type,
att.divLike.attribute.org,
att.divLike.attribute.sample,
att.divLike.attribute.part,
att.declaring.attribute.decls,
(
  ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
  ( macro.component, model.global* )+,
  ( ( model.divWrapper | model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
)
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLike**att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Note:** any sequence of low-level structural elements, e.g., paragraphs (<p>), lists (<list>), or examples (<eg> or <egXML>).

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.71 <divGen>

(automatically generated text division) indicates the location at which a textual division generated automatically by a text-processing application is to appear.

**Class:** *model.frontPart*

**Declaration**

```
element divGen
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  model.divWrapper*
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

#### Example

One use for this element is to allow document preparation software to generate an index and insert it in the appropriate place in the output. The example below assumes that the **indexName** attribute on <index> elements in the text has been used to specify index entries for the two generated indexes, named NAMES and THINGS:

```

<back>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Bibliography</head>
    <listBibl>
      <bibl/>
    </listBibl>
  </div1>
  <div1 type="backmat">
    <head>Indices</head>
    <divGen n="Index Nominum" type="NAMES"/>
    <divGen n="Index Rerum" type="THINGS"/>
  </div1>
</back>

```

**Example**

Another use for <divGen> is to specify the location of an automatically produced table of contents:

```

<front>
  <divGen type="toc"/>
  <div>
    <head>Preface</head>
    <p>...</p>
  </div>
</front>

```

**Note:** This element is intended primarily for use in document production or manipulation, rather than in the transcription of pre-existing materials; it makes it easier to specify the location of indices, tables of contents, etc., to be generated by text preparation or word processing software.

**Module:** core

**2.72 <docAuthor>**

(document author) contains the name of the author of the document, as given on the title page (often but not always contained in a byline).

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart: model.divWrapper: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```

element docAuthor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** The document author's name often occurs within a byline, but the `<docAuthor>` element may be used whether the `<byline>` element is used or not.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.73 `<docDate>`

(document date) contains the date of a document, as given (usually) on a title page.

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart*: *model.divWrapper*: *model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element docDate
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute value { data.temporal }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, <docDate>1987</docDate>
</docImprint>
```

**Note:** Cf. the general `<date>` element in the core tag set. This specialized element is provided for convenience in marking and processing the date of the documents, since it is likely to require specialized handling for many applications.

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.74 <docEdition>

(document edition) contains an edition statement as presented on a title page of a document.

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element docEdition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<docEdition>The Third edition Corrected</docEdition>
```

**Note:** Cf. the `<edition>` element of bibliographic citation. As usual, the shorter name has been given to the more frequent element.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.75 <docImprint>

(document imprint) contains the imprint statement (place and date of publication, publisher name), as given (usually) at the foot of a title page.

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart*; *model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```

element docImprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | pubPlace      | docDate      | publisher      | model.global  ) *
}
  
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<docImprint>Oxford, Clarendon Press, 1987</docImprint>
```

Imprints may be somewhat more complex:

Example .1

```

1  <docImprint>
2    <pubPlace>London</pubPlace>
3    Printed for <name>E. Nutt</name>,
4    at
5    <pubPlace>Royal Exchange</pubPlace>;
6    <name>J. Roberts</name> in
7    <pubPlace>wick-Lane</pubPlace>;
8    <name>A. Dodd</name> without
9    <pubPlace>Temple-Bar</pubPlace>;
10   and <name>J. Graves</name> in
11   <pubPlace>St. James's-street.</pubPlace>
12   <date>1722.</date>
13 </docImprint>
```

**Note:** Cf. the `<imprint>` element of bibliographic citations. As with title, author, and editions, the shorter name is reserved for the element likely to be used more often.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.76 <docTitle>

(document title) contains the title of a document, including all its constituents, as given on a title page.

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element docTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.global*, ( titlePart, model.global* )+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">The DUNCIAD,
    VARIOURVM.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="sub">WITH THE
    PROLEGOMENA of SCRIBLERUS.
  </titlePart>
</docTitle>
```

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.77 <domain>

(Domain of use) describes the most important social context in which the text was realized or for which it is intended, for example private vs. public, education, religion, etc.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```

element domain
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<domain type="domestic"/>
<domain type="rel">religious broadcast</domain>
```

**Note:** Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose. The list presented here is primarily for illustrative purposes.

**Module:** corpus

### 2.78 <edition>

(Edition) describes the particularities of one edition of a text.

**Class:** *model.biblPart*

**Declaration**

```
element edition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

**«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»****Example**

```
<edition>First edition <date>Oct 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
```

**Example**

```
<edition>Première édition<date>Octobre 1990</date>
</edition>
<edition n="S2">Manuel de l'étudiant</edition>
```

**Module: header****2.79 <editionStmt>**

(edition statement) groups information relating to one edition of a text.

**Declaration**

```
element editionStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( edition, respStmt* ) )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlid»**

**«att.global.attribute.n»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmllang»**

**«att.global.attribute.rend»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.next»**

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Students' edition</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>Adapted by</resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

### Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
</p>
</editionStmt>
```

### Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <edition n="S2">Manuel de l'étudiant</edition>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>adaptée par</resp>
    <name>Elizabeth Kirk</name>
  </respStmt>
</editionStmt>
```

### Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <p>Première édition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
</p>
</editionStmt>
```

### Example

```
<editionStmt>
  <p>First edition, <date>Michaelmas Term, 1991.</date>
</p>
</editionStmt>
```

### Module: header

## 2.80 <editor>

(editor) secondary statement of responsibility for a bibliographic item, for example the name of an individual, institution or organization, (or of several such) acting as editor, compiler, translator, etc.

**Class:** *model.respLike*

### Declaration

```
element editor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
```

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute role { data.enumerated }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<editor>Eric Johnson</editor>
<editor role="illustrator">John Tenniel</editor>

```

**Note:** A consistent format should be adopted. Particularly where cataloguing is likely to be based on the content of the header, it is advisable to use generally recognized authority lists for the exact form of personal names.

**Module:** core

### 2.81 <editorialDecl>

(editorial practice declaration) provides details of editorial principles and practices applied during the encoding of a text.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart: att.declarable*

Declaration

```
element editorialDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.editorialDeclPart+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Example**

```

<editorialDecl>
  <normalization source="W9">
    <p>All words converted to Modern American spelling using
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary</p>
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all" form="std">
    <p>All opening quotation marks converted to " all closing
      quotation marks converted to &cdq;.</p>
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>

```

### Example

```

<editorialDecl>
  <normalization source="W9">
    <p>Tous les mots ont été convertis dans l'orthographe de l'américain moderne selon la 9e édition du Web
  </normalization>
  <quotation marks="all" form="std">
    <p>Toutes les marques ouvrantes de citation sont représentées par référence à l'entité ODQ " ; toutes l
  </quotation>
</editorialDecl>

```

### Module: header

## 2.82 <education>

contains a description of the educational experience of a person.

**Class:** *model.persStateLike: att.editLike: att.dataable: att.naming*

### Declaration

```

element education
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.dataableatt.naming* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.from»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.to»  
 «att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```

<education>Left school at age 16</education>
<education notBefore="1986-01-01" notAfter="1990-06-30">Attended
  <name>Cherwell School</name>
</education>
  
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.83 <emph>

(emphasized) marks words or phrases which are stressed or emphasized for linguistic or rhetorical effect.

**Class:** *model.hiLike*

**Declaration**

```

element emph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
}
  
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
macro.paraContent}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
You took the car and did <emph>what</emph>?!!
```

### Example

```

<q>What it all comes to is this,</q> he said. <q>
  <emph>What
    does Christopher Robin do in the morning nowadays?</emph>
</q>

```

**Module:** core

### 2.84 <encodingDesc>

(Encoding description) documents the relationship between an electronic text and the source or sources from which it was derived.

**Class:** *model.headerPart*

Declaration

```
element encodingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( ( model.encodingPart | model.pLike )+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Module:** header

## 2.85 &lt;epigraph&gt;

(epigraph) contains a quotation, anonymous or attributed, appearing at the start of a section or chapter, or on a title page.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper: model.titlepagePart: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element epigraph
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.componentSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<epigraph xml:lang="la">
  <cit>
    <bibl>Lucret.</bibl>
    <quote>
      <l part="F">petere inde coronam,</l>
      <l>Vnde prius nulli velarint tempora Musae.</l>
    </quote>
  </cit>
</epigraph>
```

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.86 <equipment>

(equipment) provides technical details of the equipment and media used for an audio or video recording used as the source for a spoken text.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.recordingPart*

**Declaration**

```
element equipment
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<equipment>
  <p>"Hi-8" 8 mm NTSC camcorder with integral directional
    microphone and windshield and stereo digital sound
    recording channel.</p>
</equipment>
```

### Example

```
<equipment>
  <p>8-track analogue transfer mixed down to 19 cm/sec audio tape for cassette mastering</p>
</equipment>
```

### Example

```
<equipment>
  <p>Caméscope <q>Hi-8</q> 8 mm NTSC avec microphone directionnel intégré, pare-vent et enregistrement son</p>
</equipment>
```

### Example

```
<equipment>
  <p>Transfert d'un enregistrement 8 pistes analogique vers une cassette audio 19 cm/sec</p>
</equipment>
```

### Example

```
<equipment>
  <p>8-track analogue transfer mixed down to 19 cm/sec audio
    tape for cassette mastering</p>
</equipment>
```

### Module: header

## 2.87 <equiv>

specifies a component which is considered equivalent to the parent element, either by co-reference, or by external link.

**Class:** *model.glossLike*

**Declaration**

```
element equiv
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
attribute name { data.name }?,  
attribute uri { data.pointer }?,  
attribute filter { xsd:anyURI }?,  
attribute mimeType { data.word }?,  
empty  
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

The following example declares that the `<bo>` element is conceptually equivalent to the markup construct `<hi rend='bold'>`, and that an external definition of this concept is available from the URI indicated

```
<elementSpec ident="hi" mode="change">  
  <equiv name="BOLD"/>  
  <desc>bold typography</desc>  
  <attList>  
    <attDef ident="rend">  
      <valList>  
        <valItem ident="bold"/>  
      </valList>  
    </attDef>  
  </attList>  
</elementSpec>  
<elementSpec ident="bo" mode="add">  
  <equiv name="BOLD" uri="http://www.typesrus.com/bold"/>  
</elementSpec>
```

**Module:** core

**2.88** <expan>

(expansion) contains the expansion of an abbreviation.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit: model.choicePart: att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```

element expan
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

### «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

#### Example

```
The address is Southmoor <choice>
  <expan resp="#LB">Road</expan>
  <abbr>Rd</abbr>
</choice>
```

**Note:** The `<expan>` tag is not required; if appropriate, the encoder may expand abbreviations in the source text silently, without tagging them. If this is done, the TEI header should so indicate.

**Module:** core

### 2.89 <extent>

describes the approximate size of the electronic text as stored on some carrier medium, specified in any convenient units.

**Class:** *model.biblPart*

**Declaration**

```
element extent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<extent>3200 sentences</extent>
<extent>between 10 and 20 Mb</extent>
<extent>ten 3.5 inch high density diskettes</extent>
```

### Example

```
<extent>3 200 phrases</extent>
<extent>entre 10 et 20 Mo</extent>
<extent>10 disquettes haute densité 3.5"</extent>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.90 <factuality>

describes the extent to which the text may be regarded as imaginative or non-imaginative, that is, as describing a fictional or a non-fictional world.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```
element factuality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { "fiction" | "fact" | "mixed" | "inapplicable" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<factuality type="fiction"/>
```

### Example

```
<factuality type="mixed">contains a mixture of gossip and  
speculation about real people and events</factuality>
```

**Note:** Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose. For many literary texts, a simple binary opposition between ‘fiction’ and ‘fact’ is naïve in the extreme; this parameter is not intended for purposes of subtle literary analysis, but as a simple means of characterising the claimed fictiveness of a given text. No claim is made that works characterised as ‘fact’ are in any sense ‘true’.

**Module:** corpus

## 2.91 <faith>

specifies the faith, religion, or belief set of a person.

**Class:** *model.persTraitLike: att.editLike: att.dataable*

**Declaration**

```
element faith
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.dataable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.from»  
 «att.dataable.attribute.to»

#### Example

```
<faith>protestant</faith>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.92 <fileDesc>

(File Description) contains a full bibliographic description of an electronic file.

Declaration

```
element fileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( macro.fileDescPart, sourceDesc+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** The major source of information for those seeking to create a catalogue entry or bibliographic citation for an electronic file. As such, it provides a title and statements of responsibility together with details of the publication or distribution of the file, of any series to which it belongs, and detailed bibliographic notes for matters not addressed elsewhere in the header. It also contains a full bibliographic description for the source or sources from which the electronic text was derived.

**Module:** header

## 2.93 <firstLang>

(First language) specifies the first language of a participant.

Declaration

```
element firstLang
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<firstLang>French</firstLang>
```

**Module:** corpus

### 2.94 <floruit>

contains information about a person's period of activity.

**Class:** *att.dateable: att.editLike: model.persStateLike*

**Declaration**

```
element floruit
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dateable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dateable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dateable.attribute.from,
  att.dateable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dateableatt.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataable.attribute.from»

«att.dataable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

### Example

```
<floruit notBefore="1066" notAfter="1100"/>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.95 <foreign>

(foreign) identifies a word or phrase as belonging to some language other than that of the surrounding text.

**Class:** *model.hiLike*

**Declaration**

```
element foreign
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

This is heathen Greek to you still?  
 Your <foreign xml:lang="la">lapis philosophicus</foreign>?

**Note:** The global **xml:lang** attribute should be supplied for this element to identify the language of the word or phrase marked. As elsewhere its value should be a language code from RFC 3066 or its successor that represents the language in question. It is strongly recommended that the **xml:lang** attribute be consistently specified on all <foreign> elements. This element is intended for use only where no other element is available to mark the phrase or words concerned. The global **xml:lang** attribute should be used in preference to this element where it is intended to mark the language of the whole of some text element. The <distinct> element may be used to identify phrases belonging to sublanguages or registers not generally regarded as true languages.

**Module:** core

## 2.96 <forename>

(forename) contains a forename, given or baptismal name.

**Class:** *model.persNamePart: att.personal*

**Declaration**

```
element forename
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.personal.attribute.type,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.personal*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.personal.attribute.type»  
 «att.personal.attribute.full»  
 «att.personal.attribute.sort»

### Example

```

<persName>
  <roleName>Ex-President</roleName>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname>Bush</surname>
</persName>

```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.97 <front>

(front matter) contains any prefatory matter (headers, title page, prefaces, dedications, etc.) found at the start of a document, before the main body.

**Class:** *att.declaring*

Declaration

```

element front
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,

```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.declaring.attribute.decls,
(
  ( model.frontPart | model.global )*,
  (
    (
      ( model.pLike.front ),
      ( model.pLike.front | titlePage | model.global )*
    )
    | ( div, ( div | model.frontPart | model.global )* )
    | ( div1, ( div1 | model.frontPart | model.global )* )
  )?
)
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```

<front>
  <div xml:lang="la" type="epigraph">
    <quote>Nam Sibyllam quidem Cumis ego ipse oculis meis
      vidi in ampulla pendere, et cum illi pueri dicerent:
      <q xml:lang="grc">Sibylla ti weleis</q>; respondebat
      illa: <q xml:lang="grc">apowanein welo.</q>
    </quote>
  </div>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>For Ezra Pound <q xml:lang="it">il miglior fabbro.</q>
    </p>
  </div>
</front>

```

**Example**

```

<front>
  <div type="dedication">
    <p>To our three selves</p>
  </div>
  <div type="preface">
    <head>Author's Note</head>
    <p>All the characters in this book are purely imaginary, and if the
      author has used names that may suggest a reference to living persons
      she has done so inadvertently.
      ...</p>
  </div>
</front>

```

**Module:** textstructure**2.98** <fsdDecl>

(FSD (feature-system declaration) declaration) identifies the feature system declaration which contains definitions for a particular type of feature structure.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart***Declaration**

```

element fsdDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated },
  attribute url { data.pointer },
  empty
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<encodingDesc>
  <fsdDecl type="GPSG" url="Gazdar.fsd"/>
  <fsdDecl type="entry" url="Lexicon.fsd"/>
  <fsdDecl type="subentry" url="Lexicon.fsd"/>
</encodingDesc>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.99 <funder>

(Funding body) specifies the name of an individual, institution, or organization responsible for the funding of a project or text.

**Declaration**

```
element funder
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, an independent
  federal agency</funder>
<funder>Directorate General XIII of the Commission of the
  European Communities</funder>
<funder>The Andrew W. Mellon Foundation</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder>
```

### Example

```
<funder>The National Endowment for the Humanities, agence fédérale indépendante</funder>
<funder>Direction générale XIII de la Commission des Communautés européennes</funder>
<funder>Fondation Andrew W. Mellon</funder>
<funder>The Social Sciences and Humanities Research Council of Canada</funder>
```

**Note:** Funders provide financial support for a project; they are distinct from sponsors, who provide intellectual support and authority.

**Module:** header

## 2.100 <gap>

(omitted material) indicates a point where material has been omitted in a transcription, whether for editorial reasons described in the TEI header, as part of sampling practice, or because the material is illegible or inaudible.

**Class:** *model.global.edit: att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```
element gap
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  attribute reason { data.words }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
```

```
attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
attribute extent { data.words }?,
macro.glossSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

**Note:** The <gap>, <unclear>, and <del> core tag elements may be closely allied in use with the <damage> and <supplied> elements, available when using the additional tagset for transcription of primary sources. See section «PHCOMB» for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

**Module:** core

### 2.101 <genName>

contains a name component used to distinguish otherwise similar names on the basis of the relative ages or generations of the persons named.

**Class:** *model.persNamePart*: *att.personal*

**Declaration**

```
element genName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
```

```

att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.personal.attribute.type,
att.personal.attribute.full,
att.personal.attribute.sort,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.personal* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.personal.attribute.type»

«att.personal.attribute.full»

«att.personal.attribute.sort»

### Example

```

<persName>
  <forename>Charles</forename>
  <genName>II</genName>
</persName>

```

### Example

```

<persName>
  <surname>Pitt</surname>
  <genName>the Younger</genName>
</persName>

```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.102 <geog>

(geographical feature name) contains a common noun identifying some geographical feature contained within a geographic name, such as valley, mount etc.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart*: *att.naming*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element geog
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming**att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```
<geogName> The <geog>vale</geog>
of White Horse</geogName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.103 <geogName>

(geographical name) a name associated with some geographical feature such as Windrush Valley or Mount Sinai.

**Class:** *att.naming: model.nameLike*

**Declaration**

```
element geogName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | geog | model.nameLike | model.global )*
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<geogName>
  <geog>Mount</geog>
  <name>Sinai</name>
</geogName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.104 <gloss>

identifies a phrase or word used to provide a gloss or definition for some other word or phrase.

**Class:** *model.hiLike: att.declaring: att.translatable: model.glossLike*

**Declaration**

```
element gloss
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.translatable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  att.translatable.attribute.version,
  ( attribute target { data.pointer } | attribute cRef { data.pointer } )?,
  macro.phraseSeq
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring**att.translatable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.declaring.attribute.decls»  
 «att.translatable.attribute.version»

**Choice:** **target** identifies the associated term element by an absolute or relative URI reference

**cRef** identifies the associated term element using a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a refsDecl element in the TEI header

### Example

```
We may define <term xml:id="tdpv" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>
as <gloss target="tdpv">the relationship, expressed through discourse
  structure, between the implied author or some other addresser,
  and the fiction.</gloss>
```

**Note:** The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

**Module:** core

## 2.105 <graphic>

indicates the location of an inline graphic, illustration, or figure.

**Class:** *model.graphicLike*: *model.titlepagePart*

**Declaration**

```
element graphic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute width { data.outputMeasurement }?,
  attribute height { data.outputMeasurement }?,
  attribute scale { data.numeric }?,
  attribute url { data.pointer }?,
  attribute mimeType { data.word }?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<figure>
  <graphic url="fig1.png"/>
  <head>Figure One: The View from the Bridge</head>
  <figDesc>A Whistleresque view showing four
    or five sailing boats in the foreground, and a
    series of buoys strung out between them.</figDesc>
</figure>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.106 <group>

contains the body of a composite text, grouping together a sequence of distinct texts (or groups of such texts) which are regarded as a unit for some purpose, for example the collected works of an author, a sequence of prose essays, etc.

**Class:** *att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element group
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
```

```

    att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
    att.global.linking.attribute.next,
    att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
    att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
    att.global.linking.attribute.select,
    att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
    att.declaring.attribute.decls,
    (
      ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,
      ( ( text | group ), ( text | group | model.global )* ),
      model.divWrapper.bottom*
    )
  }

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.107 <head>

(heading) contains any type of heading, for example the title of a section, or the heading of a list, glossary, manuscript description, etc.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper*: *model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```

element head
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,

```

```
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,  
macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

The most common use for the <head> element is to mark the headings of sections. In older writings, the headings or incipits may be rather longer than usual in modern works. If a section has an explicit ending as well as a heading, it should be marked as a <trailer>, as in this example:

```
<div1 n="I" type="book">  
  <head>In the name of Christ here begins  
  the first book of the ecclesiastical history of Georgius  
  Florentinus, known as Gregory, Bishop of Tours.</head>  
  <list>  
    <head>Chapter-Headings</head>  
  </list>  
  <div2 type="section">  
    <head>In the name of Christ here begins Book I of the  
    history.</head>  
    <p>Proposing as I do ...</p>  
    <p>From the Passion of our Lord until the death of Saint Martin  
    four hundred and twelve years passed.</p>  
    <trailer>Here ends the first Book, which covers five thousand,  
    five hundred and ninety-six years from the beginning of the  
    world down to the death of Saint Martin.</trailer>  
  </div2>  
</div1>
```

**Example**

The `<head>` tag is also used to mark headings of other units, such as lists:

```
With a few exceptions, connectives are equally useful in
all kinds of discourse:  description, narration, exposition,
argument.
<list type="simple">
  <head>Connectives</head>
  <item>above</item>
  <item>accordingly</item>
  <item>across from</item>
  <item>adjacent to</item>
  <item>again</item>
</item>
</list>
```

**Note:** The `<head>` element is used for headings at all levels; software which treats (e.g.) chapter headings, section headings, and list titles differently must determine the proper processing of a `<head>` element based on its structural position. A `<head>` occurring as the first element of a list is the title of that list; one occurring as the first element of a `<div1>` is the title of that chapter or section.

**Module:** core

**2.108 <headItem>**

(heading for list items) contains the heading for the item or gloss column in a glossary list or similar structured list.

**Declaration**

```
element headItem
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is
preferable to the use of a worn-out expression.
<list type="gloss">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>
```

**Note:** The `<headItem>` element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a `<label>`.

**Module:** core

### 2.109 <headLabel>

(heading for list labels) contains the heading for the label or term column in a glossary list or similar structured list.

**Declaration**

```
element headLabel
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

The simple, straightforward statement of an idea is
preferable to the use of a worn-out expression.
<list type="gloss">
  <headLabel rend="small caps">TRITE</headLabel>
  <headItem rend="small caps">SIMPLE, STRAIGHTFORWARD</headItem>
  <label>bury the hatchet</label>
  <item>stop fighting, make peace</item>
  <label>at loose ends</label>
  <item>disorganized</item>
  <label>on speaking terms</label>
  <item>friendly</item>
  <label>fair and square</label>
  <item>completely honest</item>
  <label>at death's door</label>
  <item>near death</item>
</list>

```

**Note:** The `<headLabel>` element may appear only if each item in the list is preceded by a `<label>`.

**Module:** core

## 2.110 <hi>

(highlighted) marks a word or phrase as graphically distinct from the surrounding text, for reasons concerning which no claim is made.

**Class:** *model.hiLike*

**Declaration**

```

element hi
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,

```

```
att.global.attribute.rend,  
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<hi rend="gothic">And this Indenture further witnesseth</hi>  
that the said <hi rend="italic">Walter Shandy</hi>, merchant,  
in consideration of the said intended marriage ...
```

**Module:** core

### 2.111 <hour>

(hour) the hour component of a temporal expression

**Class:** *model.datePart*: *att.datePart*

Declaration

```

element hour
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.datePart.attributes,
    att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
    att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
    att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
    att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
    att.global.linking.attribute.next,
    att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
    att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
    att.global.linking.attribute.select,
    att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
    att.datePart.attribute.value,
    att.datePart.attribute.dur,
    macro.xtext }

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

**Example**

```
At the third stroke the time sponsored by Accurist
will be
<time value="18:21:30">
  <hour>six</hour>
  <minute>twenty-one</minute> and
    <second>thirty</second> seconds
</time>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.112 <hyphenation>

(Hyphenation) summarizes the way in which hyphenation in a source text has been treated in an encoded version of it.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

**Declaration**

```
element hyphenation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  attribute eol { "all" | "some" | "hard" | "none" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>End-of-line hyphenation silently removed where appropriate</p>
</hyphenation>
```

### Example

```
<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>Le trait d'union en fin de ligne a été supprimé sans mention explicite là où il était attendu.</p>
</hyphenation>
```

### Example

```
<hyphenation eol="some">
  <p>Le trait d'union en fin de ligne a été supprimé sans mention explicite là où il était attendu.</p>
</hyphenation>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.113 <idno>

(identifying number) supplies any standard or non-standard number used to identify a bibliographic item.

**Class:** *model.biblPart: model.publicationStmtPart*

**Declaration**

```
element idno
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  text
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<idno type="ISSN">0143-3385</idno>
<idno type="OTA">116</idno>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.114 <imprimatur>

contains a formal statement authorizing the publication of a work, sometimes required to appear on a title page or its verso.

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart*

**Declaration**

```
element imprimatur
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<imprimatur>Licensed and entred acording to Order.</imprimatur>
```

Module: textstructure

## 2.115 <imprint>

groups information relating to the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

### Declaration

```

element imprint
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( ( ( model.imprintPart ) | ( model.dateLike ) ), model.global* )+
}

```

Attributes: Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.116 <index>

(index entry) marks a location to be indexed for whatever purpose.

**Class:** *model.global.meta: att.spanning*

**Declaration**

```
element index
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.spanning.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.spanning.attribute.spanTo,
  attribute indexName { data.name }?,
  ( term, index? ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.spanning* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.spanning.attribute.spanTo»

### Example

```

David's other principal backer, Josiah ha-Kohen
<index indexName="NAMES">
  <term>Josiah ha-Kohen b. Azarya</term>
</index> b. Azarya, son of one of the last gaons of Sura
<index indexName="PLACES">
  <term>Sura</term>
</index> was David's own first cousin.
  
```

**Module:** core

## 2.117 <interaction>

describes the extant, cardinality and nature of any interaction among those producing and experiencing the text, for example in the form of response or interjection, commentary etc.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```

element interaction
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute type { "none" | "partial" | "complete" | "inapplicable" }?,
attribute active { data.enumerated }?,
attribute passive { data.enumerated }?,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<interaction type="complete" active="plural" passive="many"/>
```

### Example

```
<interaction type="none" active="singular" passive="group"/>
```

**Module:** corpus

### 2.118 <interp>

(interpretation) summarizes a specific interpretative annotation which can be linked to a span of text.

**Class:** *model.global.meta: att.interpLike*

Declaration

```

element interp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.interpLike.attribute.resp,
  att.interpLike.attribute.type,
  att.interpLike.attribute.inst,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.interpLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.interpLike.attribute.resp»

«att.interpLike.attribute.type»

«att.interpLike.attribute.inst»

### Example

```
<interp resp="#TMA" type="structuralunit">aftermath</interp>
```

**Module:** analysis

### 2.119 <interpGrp>

(interpretation group) collects together a set of related interpretations which share responsibility or type.

**Class:** *att.interpLike: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```
element interpGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.interpLike.attribute.resp,
  att.interpLike.attribute.type,
  att.interpLike.attribute.inst,
  interp+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.interpLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.interpLike.attribute.resp»

«att.interpLike.attribute.type»

## «att.interpLike.attribute.inst»

**Example**

```
<interpGrp resp="#TMA" type="structuralunit">
  <interp xml:id="I1">introduction</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I2">conflict</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I3">climax</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I4">revenge</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I5">reconciliation</interp>
  <interp xml:id="I6">aftermath</interp>
</interpGrp>
```

**Note:** Any number of <interp> elements.

**Module:** analysis

## 2.120 &lt;interpretation&gt;

describes the scope of any analytic or interpretive information added to the text in addition to the transcription.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

**Declaration**

```
element interpretation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<interpretation>
  <p>The part of speech analysis applied throughout section 4 was
    added by hand and has not been checked</p>
</interpretation>
```

### Example

```
<interpretation>
  <p>La partie de l'analyse du discours appliquée dans la section 4 a été ajoutée à la main et n'a pas été
</interpretation>
```

### Module: header

#### 2.121 <item>

contains one component of a list.

#### Declaration

```
element item
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.specialPara}
```

#### Attributes: Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<list type="ordered">
  <head>Here begin the chapter headings of Book IV</head>
  <item n="4.1">The death of Queen Clotild.</item>
  <item n="4.2">How King Lothar wanted to appropriate
    one third of the Church revenues.</item>
  <item n="4.3">The wives and children of Lothar.</item>
  <item n="4.4">The Counts of the Bretons.</item>
  <item n="4.5">Saint Gall the Bishop.</item>
  <item n="4.6">The priest Cato.</item>
  <item>...</item>
</list>

```

**Note:** May contain simple prose or a sequence of chunks. Whatever string of characters is used to label a list item in the copy text may be used as the value of the global **n** attribute, but it is not required that numbering be recorded explicitly. In ordered lists, the **n** attribute on the `<item>` element is by definition synonymous with the use of the `<label>` element to record the enumerator of the list item. In glossary lists, however, the term being defined should be given with the `<label>` element, not **n**.

**Module:** core

## 2.122 <join>

identifies a possibly fragmented segment of text, by pointing at the possibly discontinuous elements which compose it.

**Class:** *att.pointing: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```

element join
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
att.pointing.attribute.type,  
att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,  
attribute targets { data.pointers },  
attribute result { data.name }?,  
attribute scope { "root" | "branches" }?,  
macro.glossSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.pointing.attribute.type»

«att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

### Example

The following example is discussed in section «SAAG»:

```
<sp who="#frog_hughie">  
  <p>How does it go?  
    <q>  
      <l xml:id="frog_x1">da-da-da</l>  
      <l xml:id="frog_l2">gets a new frog</l>  
      <l>...</l>  
    </q>  
  </p>  
</sp>  
<sp who="#frog_louie">  
  <p>  
    <q>  
      <l xml:id="frog_l1">When the old pond</l>  
      <l>...</l>  
    </q>  
  </p>  
</sp>
```

```

<sp who="#frog_dewey">
  <p>
    <q>...
      <l xml:id="frog_l3">It's a new pond.</l>
    </q>
  </p>
  <join targets="#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3" result="lg" scope="root"/>
</sp>

```

The `<join>` element here identifies a linegroup (`<lg>`) comprising the three lines indicated by the **targets** attribute. The value `root` for the **scope** attribute indicates that the resulting virtual element contains the three `<l>` elements linked to at `#frog_l1 #frog_l2 #frog_l3`, rather than their character data content.

### Example

In this example, the attribute **scope** is specified with the value of `branches` to indicate that the virtual list being constructed is to be made by taking the lists indicated by the **targets** attribute of the `<join>` element, discarding the `<list>` tags which enclose them, and combining the items contained within the lists into a single virtual list:

```

<p>Southern dialect (my own variety, at least) has only
  <list xml:id="LP1">
    <item>
      <s>I done gone</s>
    </item>
    <item>
      <s>I done went</s>
    </item>
  </list> whereas Negro Non-Standard basilect has both these and
  <list xml:id="LP2">
    <item>
      <s>I done go</s>
    </item>
  </list>.</p>
<p>White Southern dialect also has
  <list xml:id="LP3">
    <item>
      <s>I've done gone</s>
    </item>
    <item>
      <s>I've done went</s>
    </item>
  </list> which, when they occur in Negro dialect, should probably
  be considered as borrowings from other varieties of
  English.</p>
<join
  result="list"
  xml:id="LST1"
  targets="#LP1 #LP2 #LP3"
  scope="branches">
  <desc>Sample sentences in Southern speech</desc>
</join>

```

### Module: linking

## 2.123 <joinGrp>

(join group) groups a collection of join elements and possibly pointers.

**Class:** *att.pointing.group: model.global.meta*

### Declaration

```

element joinGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,

```

```

att.global.attribute.xmllang,
att.global.attribute.rend,
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.pointing.group.attribute.domains,
att.pointing.group.attribute.targFunc,
att.pointing.attribute.type,
att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
attribute result { data.name }?,
( macro.glossSeq?, ( join | ptr )+ )
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing.group* ]

«**att.global.attribute.xmlspace**»

«**att.global.attribute.xmlid**»

«**att.global.attribute.n**»

«**att.global.attribute.xmllang**»

«**att.global.attribute.rend**»

«**att.global.attribute.xmlbase**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.corresp**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.synch**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.next**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.prev**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.exclude**»

«**att.global.linking.attribute.select**»

«**att.global.analytic.attribute.ana**»

«**att.pointing.group.attribute.domains**»

«**att.pointing.group.attribute.targFunc**»

«**att.pointing.attribute.type**»

«**att.pointing.attribute.evaluate**»

### Example

```

<joinGrp domains="zuitxt zuitxt zuitxt" result="q">
  <join targets="#zuiq1 #zuiq2 #zuiq6"/>
  <join targets="#zuiq3 #zuiq4 #zuiq5"/>
</joinGrp>

```

**Note:** Any number of <join> or <ptr> elements.

**Module:** linking

## 2.124 &lt;keywords&gt;

(Keywords) contains a list of keywords or phrases identifying the topic or nature of a text.

## Declaration

```

element keywords
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer },
  ( term+ | list )
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

## Example

```

<keywords scheme="#bl">
  <list>
    <item>Babbage, Charles</item>
    <item>Mathematicians - Great Britain - Biography</item>
  </list>
</keywords>

```

### Example

```
<keywords scheme="#bl">
  <list>
    <item>Babbage, Charles</item>
    <item>Mathématiciens - Grande Bretagne - Biographie</item>
  </list>
</keywords>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.125 <l>

(verse line) contains a single, possibly incomplete, line of verse.

**Class:** *model.divPart*: *model.lLike*: att.metrical: att.enjamb

**Declaration**

```
element l
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute part { "Y" | "N" | "I" | "M" | "F" }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [att.metrical att.enjamb ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<l met="-/-/-/-/" part="Y"/>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.126 <label>

contains the label associated with an item in a list; in glossaries, marks the term being defined.

**Class:** *model.inter: model.common*

**Declaration**

```
element label
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

### «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

#### Example

Labels are most commonly used for the headwords in glossary lists; note the use of the global **xml:lang** attribute to set the default language of the glossary list to Middle English, and identify the glosses and headings as modern English or Latin:

```
<list type="gloss" xml:lang="enm">
  <head xml:lang="en">Vocabulary</head>
  <headLabel xml:lang="en">Middle English</headLabel>
  <headItem xml:lang="en">New English</headItem>
  <label>nu</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">now</item>
  <label>lhude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">loudly</item>
  <label>bloweth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">blooms</item>
  <label>med</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">meadow</item>
  <label>wude</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">wood</item>
  <label>awe</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">ewe</item>
  <label>lhouth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">lows</item>
  <label>sterteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">bounds, frisks
    (cf. <cit>
      <ref>Chaucer, K.T.644</ref>
      <quote>a courser,
        <term>sterting</term>as the fyr</quote>
    </cit>
  </item>
  <label>verteth</label>
  <item xml:lang="la">pedit</item>
  <label>murie</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">merrily</item>
  <label>swik</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">cease</item>
  <label>naver</label>
  <item xml:lang="en">never</item>
</list>
```

#### Example

Labels may also be used to record explicitly the numbers or letters which mark list items in ordered lists, as in this extract from Gibbon's *Autobiography*. In this usage the `<label>` element is synonymous with the **n** attribute on the `<item>` element:

```
I will add two facts, which have seldom occurred in
the composition of six, or at least of five quartos.
<list rend="runon" type="ordered">
  <label>(1)</label>
  <item>My first rough manuscript, without any
intermediate copy, has been sent to the press.</item>
  <label>(2)</label>
  <item>Not a sheet has been seen by any human
eyes, excepting those of the author and the printer:
the faults and the merits are exclusively my own.</item>
</list>
```

#### Example

Labels may also be used for other structured list items, as in this extract from the journal of Edward Gibbon:

```
<list type="gloss">
  <label>March 1757.</label>
  <item>I wrote some critical observations upon Plautus.</item>
```

```

<label>March 8th.</label>
<item>I wrote a long dissertation upon some lines of Virgil.</item>
<label>June.</label>
<item>I saw Mademoiselle Curchod --
    <q xml:lang="la">Omnia vincit amor, et nos cedamus amori.</q>
</item>
<label>August.</label>
<item>I went to Crassy, and staid two days.</item>
</list>

```

**Module:** core

## 2.127 <langKnowledge>

summarizes the state of a person's linguistic knowledge, either as prose or by a list of langKnown elements.

**Class:** *model.persTraitLike*: *att.dataable*: *att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```

element langKnowledge
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  attribute tags { list { data.language+ } }?,
  ( model.pLike | langKnown+ )
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dataable**att.editLike* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.corresp*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.synch*»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.dateable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dateable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dateable.attribute.from»

«att.dateable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

### Example

```
<langKnowledge tags="en-GB fr">
  <p>British English and
    French</p>
</langKnowledge>
```

### Example

```
<langKnowledge>
  <langKnown tag="en-GB" level="H">British English</langKnown>
  <langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown>
</langKnowledge>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.128 <langKnown>

(linguistic competence) summarizes the state of a person's knowledge of a single language.

**Class:** *att.dateable: att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```
element langKnown
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
att.dataable.attribute.from,
att.dataable.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
attribute tag { data.language },
attribute level { data.code }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dataable* *att.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataable.attribute.from»

«att.dataable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

### Example

```

<langKnown tag="en-GB" level="H">British English</langKnown>
<langKnown tag="fr" level="M">French</langKnown>

```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.129 <langUsage>

(language usage) describes the languages, sublanguages, registers, dialects etc. represented within a text.

**Class:** *model.profileDescPart: att.declarable*

**Declaration**

```
element langUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  language+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Example**

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Canadian business English</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">British English</language>
</langUsage>
```

### Example

```
<langUsage>
  <language ident="fr-CA" usage="60">Québécois</language>
  <language ident="en-CA" usage="20">Anglais canadien des affaires</language>
  <language ident="en-GB" usage="20">Anglais britannique</language>
</langUsage>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.130 <language>

characterizes a single language or sublanguage used within a text.

**Declaration**

```
element language
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute ident { data.language },
  attribute usage { xsd:nonNegativeInteger { maxInclusive = "100" } }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<langUsage xml:lang="en-US">
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">modern American English</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaijani in Arabic script</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Pig Latin</language>
</langUsage>
```

### Example

```
<langUsage xml:lang="en-US">
  <language ident="en-US" usage="75">Anglais américain moderne</language>
  <language ident="i-az-Arab" usage="20">Azerbaïdjanais en écriture arabe</language>
  <language ident="x-lap" usage="05">Latin de cuisine</language>
</langUsage>
```

**Note:** Particularly for sublanguages, an informal prose characterization should be supplied as content for the element.

**Module:** header

### 2.131 <lb>

(line break) marks the start of a new (typographic) line in some edition or version of a text.

**Class:** *model.milestoneLike*

**Declaration**

```
element lb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute ed { data.code }?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** On this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the line which follows the point of insertion of this <lb>. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with line breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the line within the page, or to some aspect of the logical structure of the text. By convention, <lb> elements should appear at the start of the line to which they refer. The <lb> tag is intended for making typographic line breaks in prose. It should be carefully distinguished from the <l> element, used to mark lines of verse.

**Module:** core

## 2.132 <lg>

(line group) contains a group of verse lines functioning as a formal unit, e.g. a stanza, refrain, verse paragraph, etc.

**Class:** *model.divPart*: *att.divLike*

**Declaration**

```

element lg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.divLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.divLike.attribute.type,
  att.divLike.attribute.org,
  att.divLike.attribute.sample,
  att.divLike.attribute.part,
  (
    ( model.divWrapper | model.global )*,

```

```
( model.lLike | lg ),  
( model.lLike | lg | model.global )*,  
( ( model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*  
)  
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.divLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.divLike.attribute.type»

«att.divLike.attribute.org»

«att.divLike.attribute.sample»

«att.divLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```
<lg type="free">  
  <l>Let me be my own fool</l>  
  <l>of my own making, the sum of it</l>  
</lg>  
<lg type="free">  
  <l>is equivocal.</l>  
  <l>One says of the drunken farmer:</l>  
</lg>  
<lg type="free">  
  <l>leave him lay off it. And this is</l>  
  <l>the explanation.</l>  
</lg>
```

**Note:** contains verse lines or nested line groups only, possibly prefixed by a heading.

**Module:** core

## 2.133 <link>

defines an association or hypertextual link among elements or passages, of some type not more precisely specifiable by other elements.

**Class:** *att.pointing: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```

element link
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.pointing.attribute.type,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  attribute targets { data.pointers },
  empty
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.pointing.attribute.type»

### «att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

**Note:** This element should only be used to encode associations not otherwise provided for by more specific elements. The location of this element within a document has no significance, unless it is included within a <linkGrp>, in which case it may inherit the value of the **type** attribute from the value given on the <linkGrp>.

**Module:** linking

### 2.134 <linkGrp>

defines a collection of associations or hypertextual links.

**Class:** *att.pointing.group: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```
element linkGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.group.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.pointing.group.attribute.domains,
  att.pointing.group.attribute.targFunc,
  att.pointing.attribute.type,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  ( link | ptr )+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing.group* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.pointing.group.attribute.domains»

«att.pointing.group.attribute.targFunc»

«att.pointing.attribute.type»

«att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

### Example

```
<linkGrp type="translation">
  <link targets="#S1 #z1"/>
  <link targets="#S2 #z2"/>
  <link targets="#S99 #z99" type="paraphrase"/>
</linkGrp>
```

**Note:** May contain one or more `<link>` elements only, optionally with interspersed pointer elements. A web or link group is an administrative convenience, which should be used to collect a set of links together for any purpose, not simply to supply a default value for the **type** attribute.

**Module:** linking

## 2.135 <list>

contains any sequence of items organized as a list.

**Class:** *model.listLike*

**Declaration**

```
element list
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  (
    ( ( model.divWrapper ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    (
      ( item, model.global* )+
      | (
          headLabel?,
          headItem?,
          ( label, model.global*, item, model.global* )+
        )
      ),
    ( ( model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<list type="ordered">
  <item>a butcher</item>
  <item>a baker</item>
  <item>a candlestick maker, with
  <list type="bullets">
    <item>rings on his fingers</item>
    <item>bells on his toes</item>
  </list>
</item>
</list>
```

### Example

The following example treats the short numbered clauses of Anglo-Saxon legal codes as lists of items. The text is from an ordinance of King Athelstan (924–939):

```
<div1 type="section">
  <head>Athelstan's Ordinance</head>
  <list type="ordered">
    <item n="1">Concerning thieves. First, that no thief is to be
      spared who is caught with the stolen goods, [if he is] over
      twelve years and [if the value of the goods is] over eightpence.
      <list type="ordered">
        <item n="1.1">And if anyone does spare one, he is to pay for the
          thief with his wergild -- and the thief is to be no nearer a
          settlement on that account -- or to clear himself by an oath of
          that amount.</item>
        <item n="1.2">If, however, he [the thief] wishes to defend himself
          or to escape, he is not to be spared [whether younger or older
          than twelve].</item>
        <item n="1.3">If a thief is put into prison, he is to be in prison
          40 days, and he may then be redeemed with 120 shillings; and the
          kindred are to stand surety for him that he will desist for ever.</item>
        <item n="1.4">And if he steals after that, they are to pay for him
          with his wergild, or to bring him back there.</item>
      </list>
    </item>
  </list>
```

```

    <item n="1.5">And if he steals after that, they are to pay
        for him with his wergild, whether to the king or to him
        to whom it rightly belongs; and everyone of those who
        supported him is to pay 120 shillings to the king as a fine.</item>
</list>
</item>
<item n="2">Concerning lordless men. And we pronounced about these
    lordless men, from whom no justice can be obtained, that one
    should order their kindred to fetch back such a person to justice
    and to find him a lord in public meeting.
    <list type="ordered">
        <item n="2.1">And if they then will not, or cannot, produce him on
            that appointed day, he is then to be a fugitive afterwards, and
            he who encounters him is to strike him down as a thief.</item>
        <item n="2.2">And he who harbours him after that, is to pay for him
            with his wergild or to clear himself by an oath of that amount.</item>
    </list>
</item>
<item n="3">Concerning the refusal of justice. The lord who
    refuses justice and upholds his guilty man, so that the king is
    appealed to, is to repay the value of the goods and 120 shillings
    to the king; and he who appeals to the king before he demands
    justice as often as he ought, is to pay the same fine as the
    other would have done, if he had refused him justice.
    <list type="ordered">
        <item n="3.1">And the lord who is an accessory to a theft by his
            slave, and it becomes known about him, is to forfeit the slave
            and be liable to his wergild on the first occasionp if he does it
            more often, he is to be liable to pay all that he owns.</item>
        <item n="3.2">And likewise any of the king's treasurers or of our
            reeves, who has been an accessory of thieves who have committed
            theft, is to liable to the same.</item>
    </list>
</item>
<item n="4">Concerning treachery to a lord. And we have pronounced
    concerning treachery to a lord, that he [who is accused] is to
    forfeit his life if he cannot deny it or is afterwards convicted
    at the three-fold ordeal.</item>
</list>
</div>

```

Note that nested lists have been used so the tagging mirrors the structure indicated by the two-level numbering of the clauses. The clauses could have been treated as a one-level list with irregular numbering, if desired.

### Example

```

<p>These decrees, most blessed Pope Hadrian, we propounded in the
public council ... and they confirmed them in our hand in your
stead with the sign of the Holy Cross, and afterwards inscribed
with a careful pen on the paper of this page, affixing thus the
sign of the Holy Cross.
<list type="simple">
    <item>I, Eanbald, by the grace of God archbishop of the holy
    church of York, have subscribed to the pious and catholic
    validity of this document with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ælfwold, king of the people across the Humber,
    consenting have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Tilberht, prelate of the church of Hexham, rejoicing
    have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Higbald, bishop of the church of Lindisfarne, obeying
    have subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ethelbert, bishop of Candida Casa, suppliant, have
    subscribed with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
    <item>I, Ealdwulf, bishop of the church of Mayo, have subscribed
    with devout will.</item>
    <item>I, Æthelwine, bishop, have subscribed through
    delegates.</item>
    <item>I, Sicga, patrician, have subscribed with serene mind
    with the sign of the Holy Cross.</item>
</list>
</p>

```

**Note:** May contain an optional heading followed by a series of items, or a series of label and item pairs, the latter being optionally preceded by one or two specialized headings.

**Module:** core

### 2.136 <listBibl>

(citation list) contains a list of bibliographic citations of any kind.

**Class:** *model.listLike*: *att.declarable*: *model.msItemPart*

**Declaration**

```
element listBibl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  (
    ( ( model.divWrapper ) | ( model.global ) )*,
    ( ( model.biblLike ), model.global* )+,
    ( ( model.divWrapper.bottom ), model.global* )*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<listBibl>
  <head>Works consulted</head>
  <bibl>Blain, Clements and Grundy: Feminist Companion to
    Literature in English (Yale, 1990)</bibl>
  <biblStruct>
    <analytic>
      <title>The Interesting story of the Children in the Wood</title>
    </analytic>
    <monogr>
      <title>The Penny Histories</title>
      <author>Victor E Neuberg</author>
      <imprint>
        <publisher>OUP</publisher>
        <date>1968</date>
      </imprint>
    </monogr>
  </biblStruct>
</listBibl>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.137 <listPerson>

contains a list of descriptions, each of which provides information about an identifiable person or a group of people, for example the participants in a language interaction, or the people referred to in a historical source.

**Class:** *att.typed: att.declarable: model.biblLike: model.personLike*

**Declaration**

```
element listPerson
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( ( person | personGrp )+, particLinks? ) )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.typed* *att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.typed.attribute.type»  
 «att.typed.attribute.subtype»  
 «att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```

<listPerson type="respondents">
  <personGrp xml:id="PXXX"/>
  <person xml:id="P1234" sex="2" age="42"/>
  <person xml:id="P4332" sex="1" age="43"/>
  <particLinks>
    <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>
  </particLinks>
</listPerson>

```

**Note:** The type attribute may be used to distinguish lists of people of a particular type if convenient.  
**Module:** namesdates

### 2.138 <locale>

(locale) contains a brief informal description of the nature of a place for example a room, a restaurant, a park bench etc.

**Class:** *model.settingPart*

**Declaration**

```

element locale
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<locale>a fashionable restaurant</locale>
```

**Module:** corpus

2.139 <m>

(morpheme) represents a grammatical morpheme.

**Class:** *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*

**Declaration**

```
element m
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.segLike.attribute.type,
att.segLike.attribute.function,
att.segLike.attribute.part,
attribute baseForm { data.word }?,
( text | model.gLike | model.blockLike | c | model.global ) *
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.segLike.attribute.type»

«att.segLike.attribute.function»

«att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```

<w type="adjective">
  <w type="noun">
    <m type="prefix" baseForm="con">com</m>
    <m type="root">fort</m>
  </w>
  <m type="suffix">able</m>
</w>

```

**Note:** May contain character data, <seg>, and <c> elements only.

**Module:** analysis

## 2.140 &lt;measure&gt;

contains a word or phrase referring to some quantity of an object or commodity, usually comprising a number, a unit, and a commodity name.

**Class:** *model.measureLike: att.measurement*

**Declaration**

```

element measure
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.measurement.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.measurement.attribute.unit,
  att.measurement.attribute.quantity,
  att.measurement.attribute.commodity,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.measurement* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.measurement.attribute.unit»

«att.measurement.attribute.quantity»

«att.measurement.attribute.commodity»

### Example

```
<measure type="weight">
  <num>2</num> pounds of flesh</measure>
<measure type="currency">£10-11-6d</measure>
<measure type="area">2 merks of old extent</measure>
```

### Example

```
<measure quantity="40" unit="hogshead" commodity="rum">2 score hh rum</measure>
<measure quantity="12" unit="count" commodity="roses">1 doz. roses</measure>
<measure quantity="1" unit="count" commodity="tulips">1 yellow tulip</measure>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.141 <meeting>

in bibliographic references, contains a description of the meeting or conference from which the bibliographic item derives.

**Declaration**

```
element meeting
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»****«att.global.linking.attribute.next»****«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»****«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»****«att.global.linking.attribute.select»****«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»****Example**

```
<meeting>Ninth International Conference on Middle High German
Textual Criticism, Aachen, June 1998.</meeting>
```

**Module:** core**2.142** <mentioned>

marks words or phrases mentioned, not used.

**Class:** *model.hiLike***Declaration**

```
element mentioned
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»****«att.global.attribute.xmlid»****«att.global.attribute.n»****«att.global.attribute.xmllang»****«att.global.attribute.rend»****«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»****«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»****«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»****«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»****«att.global.linking.attribute.next»****«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»****«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»****«att.global.linking.attribute.select»****«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»****Example**

There is thus a striking accentual difference between a verbal form like `<mentioned xml:id="X234" xml:lang="el">eluthemen</mentioned>` `<gloss target="#X234">we were released,</gloss>` accented on the second syllable of the word, and its participial derivative `<mentioned xml:id="X235" xml:lang="el">lutheis</mentioned>` `<gloss target="#X235">released,</gloss>` accented on the last.

**Module:** core**2.143** `<metDecl>`

documents the notation employed to represent a metrical pattern when this is specified as the value of a `met`, `real`, or `rhyme` attribute on any structural element of a metrical text (e.g. `lg`, `l`, or `seg`).

**Class:** *model.encodingPart: att.declarable***Declaration**

```

element metDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  attribute type { list { ( "met" | "real" | "rhyme" )+ } }?,
  attribute pattern { data.enumerated }?,
  ( ( macro.componentSeq ) | ( metSym+ ) )
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable*]**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»****«att.global.attribute.xmlid»****«att.global.attribute.n»****«att.global.attribute.xmllang»****«att.global.attribute.rend»**

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```

<metDecl xml:id="ip" pattern="( (SU|US)USUSUSUS/)">
  <metSym value="S">stressed syllable</metSym>
  <metSym value="U">unstressed syllable</metSym>
  <metSym value="/">metrical line boundary</metSym>
</metDecl>

```

This example is intended for the far more restricted case typified by the Shakespearean iambic pentameter. Only metrical patterns containing exactly ten syllables, alternately stressed and unstressed, (except for the first two which may be in either order) to each metrical line can be expressed using this notation.

### Example

```

<metDecl xml:id="ip-fr" pattern="( (SU|US)USUSUSUS/)">
  <metSym value="S">syllabe accentuée</metSym>
  <metSym value="U">syllabe non accentuée</metSym>
  <metSym value="/">frontière de vers métrique</metSym>
</metDecl>

```

Cet exemple s'entend dans un cas beaucoup plus restreint dont l'exemple typique est le pentamètre iambique shakespearien. Seuls les modèles métriques contenant exactement dix syllabes, alternativement accentuées ou non accentuées, (à l'exception des deux premières qui peuvent être l'une ou l'autre) à chaque vers peuvent être exprimés en utilisant cette notation.

**Note:** The encoder may choose whether to define the notation formally or informally. However, the two methods may not be mixed. That is, <metDecl> may contain either a sequence of <metSym> elements or, alternately, a series of paragraphs or other components. If the **pattern** attribute is specified and <metSym> elements are used, then all the codes appearing within the **pattern** attribute should be documented. Only usable within the header if the verse module is used.

**Module:** header

## 2.144 <metSym>

documents the intended significance of a particular character or character sequence within a metrical notation, either explicitly or in terms of other symbol elements in the same metDecl.

Declaration

```

element metSym
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute value { data.words },
  attribute terminal { "true" | "false" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<metSym value="x">a stressed syllable</metSym>
<metSym value="o">an unstressed syllable</metSym>
<metSym value="A" terminal="false">xoo</metSym>

```

### Example

```

<metSym value="x">une syllabe accentuée</metSym>
<metSym value="o">une syllabe non accentuée</metSym>
<metSym value="A" terminal="false">xoo</metSym>

```

**Module:** header

**2.145** <milestone>

marks a boundary point separating any kind of section of a text, as indicated by changes in a standard reference system, where the section is not represented by a structural element.

**Class:** *model.milestoneLike*

**Declaration**

```

element milestone
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute ed { data.code }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated },
  empty
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<milestone n="23" ed="La" unit="Dreissiger"/>
...
<milestone n="24" ed="AV" unit="verse"/>
...
```

**Note:** For this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the new number or other value for the unit which changes at this milestone. The special value unnumbered should be used in passages which fall outside the normal numbering scheme (e.g. chapter heads, poem numbers or titles, or speaker attributions in verse drama). The order in which milestone elements are given at a given point is not normally significant.

**Module:** core

### 2.146 <minute>

(minute) the minute component of a structured time-expression.

**Class:** *model.datePart*: *att.datePart*

**Declaration**

```
element minute
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

### Example

```
The train leaves for Boston at
  <time value="13:45:00">
    <hour>13</hour>:<minute>45</minute>
  </time>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.147 <monogr>

(monographic level) contains bibliographic elements describing an item (e.g. a book or journal) published as an independent item (i.e. as a separate physical object).

### Declaration

```
element monogr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  (
    (
      (
        ( author | editor | respStmt ),
        ( author | editor | respStmt )*,
        title+,
        ( editor | respStmt )*
      )
      | ( title+, ( author | editor | respStmt )* )
    )?,
    ( model.noteLike | meeting )*,
    ( edition, ( editor | respStmt )* )*,
    imprint,
    ( imprint | extent | biblScope )*
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** May contain specialized bibliographic elements, in a prescribed order. The <monogr> element may only occur only within a <biblStruct>, where its use is mandatory for the description of an monographic level bibliographic item.

**Module:** core

### 2.148 <month>

(month) the month component of a structured date.

**Class:** *model.datePart*: *att.datePart*

**Declaration**

```
element month
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.datePart.attribute.value»  
 «att.datePart.attribute.dur»

#### Example

```

<date value="1993-05-14">
  <day type="name">Friday</day>,
  <day type="number">14</day>
  <month>May</month>
  <year>1993</year>
</date>

```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.149 <name>

(name, proper noun) contains a proper noun or noun phrase.

**Class:** *model.nameLike.agent: att.naming*

#### Declaration

```

element name
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

**Note:** Proper nouns referring to people, places, and organizations may be tagged instead with <persName>, <placeName>, or <orgName>, when the TEI module for names and dates is included.

**Module:** core

## 2.150 <nameLink>

(name link) contains a connecting phrase or link used within a name but not regarded as part of it, such as van der or of.

**Class:** *model.persNamePart*: *att.personal*

**Declaration**

```
element nameLink
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
```

```
att.personal.attribute.type,
att.personal.attribute.full,
att.personal.attribute.sort,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.personal* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.personal.attribute.type»

«att.personal.attribute.full»

«att.personal.attribute.sort»

### Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Frederick</forename>
  <nameLink>van der</nameLink>
  <surname>Tronck</surname>
</persName>
```

### Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Alfred</forename>
  <nameLink>de</nameLink>
  <surname>Musset</surname>
</persName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.151 <namespace>

supplies the formal name of the namespace to which the elements documented by its children belong.

Declaration

```
element namespace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute name { data.namespace },
  tagUsage+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage
    gi="hi"
    occurs="28"
    withId="2"
    render="#it">
```

```
Used only to mark English words italicised in the copy text
</tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

### Example

```
<namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
  <tagUsage
    gi="hi"
    occurs="28"
    withId="2"
    render="#it">
    Utilisé seulement pour marquer les mots anglais en italiques dans le texte de la copie.
  </tagUsage>
</namespace>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.152 <nationality>

contains an informal description of a person's present or past nationality or citizenship.

**Class:** *model.persTraitLike*: *att.dataable*: *att.editLike*: *att.naming*

**Declaration**

```
element nationality
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute reg { data.code }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dataable**att.editLike**att.naming*]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
«att.data.table.attribute.notBefore»  
«att.data.table.attribute.notAfter»  
«att.data.table.attribute.from»  
«att.data.table.attribute.to»  
«att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
«att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
«att.naming.attribute.key»

**Example**

```
<nationality reg="US" notBefore="1966">  
  Obtained US Citizenship in 1966</nationality>
```

**Module:** namesdates

**2.153** <normalization>

indicates the extent of normalization or regularization of the original source carried out in converting it to electronic form.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

**Declaration**

```
element normalization  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.declarable.attributes,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,  
  att.global.attribute.n,  
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,  
  att.global.attribute.rend,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
```

```

    att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
    att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
    att.global.linking.attribute.select,
    att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
    att.declarable.attribute.default,
    attribute source { data.pointer }?,
    attribute method { "silent" | "tags" }?,
    model.pLike+
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```

<editorialDecl>
  <normalization method="tags">
    <p>Where both upper- and lower-case i, j, u, v, and vv have
      been normalized, to modern 20th century typographical practice,
      the <gi>choice</gi> element has been used to enclose
      <gi>orig</gi> and <gi>reg</gi> elements giving the original and
      new values respectively. ... </p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization method="silent">
    <p>Spacing between words and following punctuation has been
      regularized to zero spaces; spacing between words has been
      regularized to one space.</p>
  </normalization>
  <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Spelling converted throughout to Modern American usage, based on
      Websters 9th Collegiate dictionary.</p>
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>

```

### Example

```
<editorialDecl>
  <normalization method="tags">
    <p>Là où à la fois les caractères i, j, u, v, et w en haut et bas de casse ont été normalisés selon la
  </normalization>
  <normalization method="silent">
    <p>Les espaces entre les mots et la ponctuation qui les suit ont été supprimés ; les espaces entre les r
  </normalization>
  <normalization source="http://www.dict.sztaki.hu/webster">
    <p>Tous les mots ont été convertis dans l'orthographe de l'américain moderne selon la 9e édition du Web
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.154 <note>

contains a note or annotation.

**Class:** *model.noteLike:* *model.biblPart:* *model.entryParts.top:* *model.msItemPart:*  
*model.personPart:* *att.placement*

**Declaration**

```
element note
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.placement.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.placement.attribute.place,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute resp { data.pointer }?,
  attribute anchored { "true" | "false" }?,
  attribute target { data.pointers }?,
  attribute targetEnd { data.pointers }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.placement* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.corresp*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.synch*»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.placement.attribute.place»

### Example

```
And yet it is not only in the great line of Italian
renaissance art, but even in the painterly
  <note resp="#Tr">
    <term xml:lang="de">Malerisch</term>.
    This word has, in the German, two distinct meanings, one objective, a
    quality residing in the object, the other subjective, a mode of
    apprehension and creation. To avoid confusion, they have been
    distinguished in English as <mentioned>picturesque</mentioned> and
    <mentioned>painterly</mentioned> respectively. (Tr.)</note>
style of the Dutch genre painters of the seventeenth century that
drapery has this psychological significance.
```

**Note:** The global **n** attribute may be used to supply the symbol or number used to mark the note's point of attachment in the source text, as in the following example:

Example .1

```
1 Mevorakh b. Saadya's mother, the matriarch of the family
2 during the second half of the eleventh century,
3   <note n="126" anchored="true">
4     The alleged mention of Judah Nagid's mother in a letter from
5     1071 is, in fact, a reference to Judah's children; cf. above,
6     nn. 111 and 54.
7   </note>
8 is well known from Geniza documents published by Jacob Mann.
```

However, if notes are numbered in sequence and their numbering can be reconstructed automatically by processing software, it may well be considered unnecessary to record the note numbers.

**Module:** core

## 2.155 <notesStmt>

(Notes statement) collects together any notes providing information about a text additional to that recorded in other parts of the bibliographic description.

**Declaration**

```
element notesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
model.noteLike+  
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<notesStmt>  
  <note>Historical commentary provided by Mark Cohen</note>  
  <note>OCR scanning done at University of Toronto</note>  
</notesStmt>
```

### Example

```
<notesStmt>  
  <note>Commentaire historique de Mark Cohen.</note>  
  <note>Numérisation OCR faite à l'Université de Toronto.</note>  
</notesStmt>
```

**Note:** Information of different kinds should not be grouped together into the same note.

**Module:** header

## 2.156 &lt;num&gt;

(number) contains a number, written in any form.

**Class:** *model.measureLike*

**Declaration**

```
element num
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute value { data.numeric }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<p>I reached <num type="cardinal" value="21">twenty-one</num>
on my <num type="ordinal" value="21">twenty-first</num> birthday...
light travels at <num value="10E10">10<hi rend="sup">10</hi>
</num> cm per second.</p>
```

**Note:** Detailed analyses of quantities and units of measure in historical documents may also use the feature structure mechanism described in chapter «FS». The <num> element is intended for use in simple applications.

**Module:** core

### 2.157 <occasion>

a temporal expression (either a date or a time) given in terms of a named occasion such as a holiday, a named time of day, or some notable event.

**Class:** *model.datePart: att.datePart: att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element occasion
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePartatt.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

**«att.global.linking.attribute.select»****«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»****«att.datePart.attribute.value»****«att.datePart.attribute.dur»****«att.typed.attribute.type»****«att.typed.attribute.subtype»****Example**

```
In New York,
  <date value="--01-01">
    <occasion type="holiday">New Years Day</occasion>
  </date> is the quietest of holidays,
  <date value="--07-04">
    <occasion type="holiday">Independence Day</occasion>
  </date>
the most turbulent.
```

**Module:** namesdates**2.158 <occupation>**

contains an informal description of a person's trade, profession or occupation.

**Class:** *model.persStateLike***Declaration**

```
element occupation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute code { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»****«att.global.attribute.xmlid»****«att.global.attribute.n»****«att.global.attribute.xmllang»****«att.global.attribute.rend»****«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»**

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

#### Example

```
<occupation>accountant</occupation>
```

#### Example

```
<occupation scheme="#rg" code="#acc">accountant</occupation>
```

#### Example

```
<occupation scheme="#rg" code="#acc">accountant  
with specialist knowledge of oil industry  
</occupation>
```

**Note:** The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.159 <offset>

(offset) that part of a relative temporal or spatial expression which indicates the direction of the offset between the two place names, dates, or times involved in the expression.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart*; *model.datePart*; *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element offset  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.typed.attributes,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,  
  att.global.attribute.n,  
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,  
  att.global.attribute.rend,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
  att.typed.attribute.type,  
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.global ) *  
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from *[att.typed ]*

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.160 <opener>

groups together dateline, byline, salutation, and similar phrases appearing as a preliminary group at the start of a division, especially of a letter.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper*

**Declaration**

```

element opener
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | model.phrase    | argument    | byline      | dateline    | epigraph    | salute      |
  )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>Walden, this 29. of August 1592</dateline>
</opener>
```

### Example

```
<opener>
  <dateline>
    <name type="place">Great Marlborough Street</name>
    <date>November 11, 1848</date>
  </dateline>
  <salute>My dear Sir,</salute>
</opener>
<p>I am sorry to say that absence from town and other
circumstances have prevented me from earlier enquiring...</p>
```

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.161 <orgDivn>

(organizational division) indicates a division, branch or department specified in an organizational name.

**Declaration**

```
element orgDivn
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
```

```

att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
attribute reg { text }?,
macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<orgName type="academic" key="DMHGU1">
  <orgDivn type="department">
    Department of Modern History
  </orgDivn>,
  Glasgow <orgType type="function">University</orgType>
</orgName>

```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.162 <orgName>

(organization name) contains an organizational name.

**Class:** *model.nameLike.agent*

**Declaration**

```
element orgName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute key { data.key }?,
  attribute reg { text }?,
  (
    text
    | model.gLike      | orgTitle      | orgType      | orgDivn      | model.phrase      | model.global      ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
About a year back, a question of considerable
interest was agitated in the
<orgName key="PAS1" type="voluntary" reg="Pennsylvania Abolition Society">
Pennsyla. Abolition Society</orgName>....
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.163 <orgTitle>

(organization title) contains the proper name component of an organizational name.

**Declaration**

```
element orgTitle
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute reg { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
Mr Frost will be able to earn an extra fee from
<orgName type="media" key="BSB1">
  <orgTitle type="acronym">BSkyB</orgTitle>
</orgName>
rather than the <orgName type="media" key="BBC1">
  <orgTitle type="acronym" reg="British Broadcasting Corporation">BBC</orgTitle>
</orgName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.164 <orgType>

(organization type) indicates a part of the organization name which contains information about the organization's structure or function.

#### Declaration

```
element orgType
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute reg { text }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<orgName type="utility company" key="WWPC1">Washington
<orgType type="function">Water Power</orgType>
  <orgType type="structure" reg="incorporated">Inc.</orgType>
</orgName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.165 <orig>

(original form) contains a reading which is marked as following the original, rather than being normalized or corrected.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit: model.choicePart*

**Declaration**

```
element orig
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

If all that is desired is to call attention to the original version in the copy text, <orig> may be used alone:

```
<l>But this
    will be a <orig>meere</orig> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
</l>
```

### Example

More usually, an <orig> will be combined with a regularized form within a <choice> element:

```
<l>But this
    will be a <choice>
      <orig>meere</orig>
      <reg>mere</reg>
    </choice> confusion</l>
<l>And hardly shall we all be <choice>
      <orig>vnderstoode</orig>
      <reg>understood</reg>
    </choice>
</l>
```

2

**Module:** core

## 2.166 <p>

(paragraph) marks paragraphs in prose.

**Class:** *model.pLike*: *model.divPart*

**Declaration**

```
element p
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

---

<sup>2</sup>Kyd, Spanish Tragedy, (1592) Kv

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<p>Hallgerd was outside.
  <q>There is blood on your axe,</q> she said.
  <q>What have you done?</q>
</p>
<p>
  <q>I have now arranged that you can be
  married a second time,</q> replied Thjostolf.</p>
<p>
  <q>Then you must mean that Thorvald is
  dead,</q> she said.</p>
<p>
  <q>Yes,</q> said Thjostolf.
  <q>And now you must think up some plan for me.</q>
</p>

```

**Note:** In some contexts, the paragraph may have a specialized meaning, e.g. in the tag set for dictionaries, `<p>` is used to enclose any running text, and thus does not imply text set off as is conventionally done in running prose.

**Module:** core

## 2.167 <particDesc>

(participation description) describes the identifiable speakers, voices, or other participants in a linguistic interaction.

**Class:** *model.profileDescPart*: att.declarable

Declaration

```

element particDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,

```

```
att.global.attribute.rend,  
att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
att.declarable.attribute.default,  
  ( model.pLike+ | model.personLike+ )  
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<particDesc>  
  <listPerson>  
    <person xml:id="P-1234" sex="2" age="42">  
      <p>Female informant, well-educated, born in Shropshire  
        UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation.  
        Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2.</p>  
    </person>  
    <person xml:id="P-4332" sex="1" age="43"/>  
  <particLinks>  
    <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#P1234 #P4332"/>  
  </particLinks>  
  </listPerson>  
</particDesc>
```

**Note:** May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a structured list of persons and person groups, with an optional formal specification of any relationships amongst them.

**Module:** corpus

## 2.168 <particLinks>

(participant relationships) describes the relationships or social links existing between participants in a linguistic interaction.

### Declaration

```

element particLinks
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.pLike+ | relation+ )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<particLinks>
  <relation
    type="personal"
    name="parent"
    active="#p1 #p2"
    passive="#p3 #p4"/>
  <relation type="personal" name="spouse" mutual="#p1 #p2"/>
  <relation
    type="social"
    name="employer"
    active="#p1"
    passive="#p3 #p5 #p6 #p7"/>
</particLinks>
```

### Example

```
<particLinks>
  <p>The persons with ids P1 and P2 are the parents of
    P3 and P4. P1 and P2 are married to each other.
    P1 is the employer of P3, P5., P6, and P7.</p>
</particLinks>
```

**Note:** May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of `<relation>` elements.

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.169 `<pb>`

(page break) marks the boundary between one page of a text and the next in a standard reference system.

**Class:** *model.milestoneLike*

**Declaration**

```
element pb
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute ed { data.code }?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** On this element, the global **n** attribute indicates the number or other value associated with the page which follows the point of insertion of this <pb>. Encoders should adopt a clear and consistent policy as to whether the numbers associated with page breaks relate to the physical sequence number of the page or the page number or signature printed on it. By convention, <pb> elements should appear at the start of the page to which they refer.

**Module:** core

## 2.170 <persEvent>

contains a description of a particular event of significance in the life of a person.

**Class:** *att.dataable: att.editLike: att.typed: att.naming: model.persEventLike*

**Declaration**

```

element persEvent
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  (
    label?,

```

```

        model.dateLike?,
        placeName?,
        model.pLike*,
        ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *
    )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datableatt.editLikeatt.typedatt.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.datable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.datable.attribute.from»

«att.datable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```

<persEvent key="#MAT">
  <label>matriculation</label>
  <date value="1972-10-12">12 Oct 1972</date>
</persEvent>

```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.171 &lt;persName&gt;

(personal name) contains a proper noun or proper-noun phrase referring to a person, possibly including any or all of the person's forenames, surnames, honorifics, added names, etc.

**Class:** *model.persStateLike*: *model.nameLike.agent*: *att.dataable*: *att.editLike*: *att.naming*

**Declaration**

```

element persName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( text | model.gLike | model.persNamePart | model.phrase | model.global )*
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dataable**att.editLike**att.naming*]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.corresp*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.synch*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.next*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.prev*»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataable.attribute.from»

«att.dataable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>Edward</forename>
  <forename>George</forename>
  <surname type="linked">Bulwer-Lytton</surname>,
    <roleName>Baron Lytton of
      <placeName>Knebworth</placeName>
    </roleName>
</persName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.172 <persState>

contains a description of some ongoing status or quality attributed to a person.

**Class:** *att.dataable: att.editLike: att.typed: att.naming: model.persStateLike*

**Declaration**

```
element persState
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
```

```

    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    att.naming.attribute.key,
    (
        label?,
        model.dateLike?,
        model.pLike*,
        ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *
    )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datableatt.editLikeatt.typedatt.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.datable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.datable.attribute.from»

«att.datable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### «att.naming.attribute.key»

#### Example

```
<persState key="#SCHOL">
  <label>scholar</label>
</persState>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.173 <persTrait>

contains a description of a personal or culturally-determined characteristic attributed to a person.

**Class:** *att.dateable: att.editLike: att.naming: att.typed: model.persTraitLike*

#### Declaration

```
element persTrait
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dateable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dateable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dateable.attribute.from,
  att.dateable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  (
    label?,
    model.dateLike?,
    model.pLike*,
    ( model.noteLike | model.biblLike ) *
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dateableatt.editLikeatt.namingatt.typed* ]

### «att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

### «att.global.attribute.xmlid»

### «att.global.attribute.n»

### «att.global.attribute.xmllang»

### «att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.dateable.attribute.notBefore»  
 «att.dateable.attribute.notAfter»  
 «att.dateable.attribute.from»  
 «att.dateable.attribute.to»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
 «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
 «att.naming.attribute.key»  
 «att.typed.attribute.type»  
 «att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```

<persTrait cert="H" key="#BritCit" type="social">
  <label>citizenship</label>
  <date from="1987-01-01" to="1997-12-31">Between 1987 and 1997</date>
  <p>Held status of naturalized UK citizen</p>
</persTrait>

```

The reference #BritCit should indicate some definition of the category "British Citizenship" elsewhere, for example in the header or some external source.

### Example

```

<persTrait type="physical">
  <label>Eye colour</label>
  <p>Blue</p>
</persTrait>

```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.174 <person>

provides information about an identifiable individual, for example a participant in a language interaction, or a person referred to in a historical source.

**Class:** *model.personLike*

**Declaration**

```
element person
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute role { data.words }?,
  attribute sex { data.sex }?,
  attribute age { data.word }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.personPart* )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<person sex="2" age="42">
  <p>Female respondent, well-educated, born in Shropshire
  UK, 12 Jan 1950, of unknown occupation.
  Speaks French fluently. Socio-Economic status B2.</p>
</person>
```

### Example

```
<person xml:id="Ovi01" sex="1" role="poet">
  <persName xml:lang="en">Ovid</persName>
  <persName xml:lang="la">Publius Ovidius Naso</persName>
  <birth date="-0044-03-20">
    20 March 43 BC
  <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Sulmona</settlement>
    <country reg="IT">Italy</country>
  </placeName>
</birth>
  <death notBefore="17" notAfter="18">17 or 18 AD
  <placeName>
    <settlement type="city">Tomis (Constanta)</settlement>
    <country reg="RO">Romania</country>
  </placeName>
</death>
</person>
```

**Note:** May contain either a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a sequence of more specific demographic elements drawn from the `model.personPart` class.

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.175 <personGrp>

(personal group) describes a group of individuals treated as a single person for analytic purposes.

**Class:** *model.personLike*

**Declaration**

```
element personGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute role { data.code }?,
  attribute sex { data.sex | "mixed" }?,
  attribute age { data.word }?,
  attribute size { data.words }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.personPart* )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<personGrp
  xml:id="pg1"
  role="audience"
  sex="mixed"
  size="approx 50"/>
```

**Note:** May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or any sequence of demographic elements in any combination. The global **xml:id** attribute should be used to identify each speaking participant in a spoken text if the **who** attribute is specified on individual utterances.

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.176 <phr>

(phrase) represents a grammatical phrase.

**Class:** *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*

**Declaration**

```
element phr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.segLike.attribute.type,
  att.segLike.attribute.function,
  att.segLike.attribute.part,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.segLike.attribute.type»  
 «att.segLike.attribute.function»  
 «att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```

<phr type="verb" function="extraposted modifier">To talk
<phr type="preposition" function="complement">of
  <phr type="noun" function="object">many things</phr>
</phr>
</phr>
  
```

**Module:** analysis

## 2.177 <placeName>

(place name) contains an absolute or relative place name.

**Class:** *model.nameLike*: *att.naming*

**Declaration**

```

element placeName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,

```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
att.naming.attribute.key,  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.placeNamePart | model.phrase | model.global ) *  
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<placeName>  
  <settlement>Rochester</settlement>  
  <region>New York</region>  
</placeName>  
<placeName>  
  <geogName>Arrochar Alps</geogName>  
  <region>Argylshire</region>  
</placeName>  
<placeName>  
  <distance>10 miles</distance>  
  <offset>Northeast of</offset>  
  <settlement>Attica</settlement>  
</placeName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.178 &lt;postBox&gt;

(postBox) contains a number or other identifier for some postal delivery point other than a street address.

**Class:** *model.addrPart*

**Declaration**

```

element postBox
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  text
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<postBox>P.O. Box 280</postBox>
```

**Example**

```
<postBox>Postbus 532</postBox>
```

**Note:** The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

**Module:** core

### 2.179 <postCode>

(postCode) contains a numerical or alphanumeric code used as part of a postal address to simplify sorting or delivery of mail.

**Class:** *model.addrPart*

**Declaration**

```
element postCode
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  text
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

**«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»****Example**

```
<postCode>HR1 3LR</postCode>
```

**Example**

```
<postCode>60142-7</postCode>
```

**Note:** The position and nature of postal codes is highly country-specific; the conventions appropriate to the country concerned should be used.

**Module:** core

**2.180 <preparedness>**

describes the extent to which a text may be regarded as prepared or spontaneous.

**Class:** *model.textDescPart*

**Declaration**

```
element preparedness
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlid»**

**«att.global.attribute.n»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmllang»**

**«att.global.attribute.rend»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.next»**

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<preparedness type="none"/>
```

Module: corpus

### 2.181 <principal>

(principal researcher) supplies the name of the principal researcher responsible for the creation of an electronic text.

#### Declaration

```
element principal
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

Attributes: Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<principal>Gary Taylor</principal>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.182 <profileDesc>

(text-profile description) provides a detailed description of non-bibliographic aspects of a text, specifically the languages and sublanguages used, the situation in which it was produced, the participants and their setting.

**Class:** *model.headerPart*

**Declaration**

```
element profileDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( creation?, model.profileDescPart* )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">French</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">print; part issues</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Late 19th century</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

### Example

```
<profileDesc>
  <langUsage>
    <language ident="fr">Français</language>
  </langUsage>
  <textDesc n="novel">
    <channel mode="w">imprimé ; livraisons</channel>
    <constitution type="single"/>
    <derivation type="original"/>
    <domain type="art"/>
    <factuality type="fiction"/>
    <interaction type="none"/>
    <preparedness type="prepared"/>
    <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
    <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
  </textDesc>
  <settingDesc>
    <setting>
      <name>Paris, France</name>
      <time>Fin du 19e siècle</time>
    </setting>
  </settingDesc>
</profileDesc>
```

### Module: header

#### 2.183 <projectDesc>

(project description) describes in detail the aim or purpose for which an electronic file was encoded, together with any other relevant information concerning the process by which it was assembled or collected.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart: att.declarable*

Declaration

```

element projectDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  model.pLike+
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```

<projectDesc>
  <p>Texts collected for use in the Claremont Shakespeare
    Clinic, June 1990</p>
</projectDesc>

```

### Example

```
<projectDesc>
  <p>Textes rassemblés pour utilisation lors du Claremont Shakespeare Clinic, juin 1990</p>
</projectDesc>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.184 <ptr>

defines a pointer to another location.

**Class:** *model.ptrLike: att.pointing: att.declaring*

**Declaration**

```
element ptr
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.pointing.attribute.type,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  ( attribute target { data.pointers } | attribute cRef { data.pointers } )?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing**att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.pointing.attribute.type»

«att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Choice:** **target** specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying one or more URI References

**cRef** specifies the destination of the pointer by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a refsDecl element in the TEI header

### Example

```
<ptr target="#p2 #p5"/>
<ptr target="#d1"/>
```

**Note:** The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

**Module:** core

## 2.185 <pubPlace>

contains the name of the place where a bibliographic item was published.

**Class:** *att.naming: model.imprintPart: model.publicationStmtPart*

**Declaration**

```
element pubPlace
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

Module: core

### 2.186 <publicationStmt>

(publication statement) groups information concerning the publication or distribution of an electronic or other text.

Declaration

```
element publicationStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.publicationStmtPart+ )
}
```

Attributes: Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>C. Muquardt</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Bruxelles & Leipzig</pubPlace>
  <date value="1846"/>
</publicationStmt>
```

### Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date value="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

### Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Disponible uniquement sur autorisation</p>
  </availability>
  <date value="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

### Example

```
<publicationStmt>
  <publisher>Chadwyck Healey</publisher>
  <pubPlace>Cambridge</pubPlace>
  <availability>
    <p>Available under licence only</p>
  </availability>
  <date value="1992">1992</date>
</publicationStmt>
```

**Note:** Although not enforced by the DTD, it is a requirement for TEI conformance that information about publication place, address, identifier, availability, and date be given in that order, following the name of the publisher, distributor, or authority concerned

**Module:** header

### 2.187 <publisher>

provides the name of the organization responsible for the publication or distribution of a bibliographic item.

**Class:** *model.imprintPart: model.publicationStmtPart*

**Declaration**

```
element publisher
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<imprint>
  <pubPlace>Oxford</pubPlace>
  <publisher>Clarendon Press</publisher>
  <date>1987</date>
</imprint>
```

**Note:** Use the full form of the name by which a company is usually referred to, rather than any abbreviation of it which may appear on a title page

**Module:** core

## 2.188 <purpose>

characterizes a single purpose or communicative function of the text.

**Declaration**

```
element purpose
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute degree { "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown" }?,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<purpose type="persuade" degree="high"/>
<purpose type="entertain" degree="low"/>
```

**Note:** Usually empty, unless some further clarification of the type attribute is needed, in which case it may contain running prose

**Module:** corpus

### 2.189 <q>

(quoted speech, thought, or writing) contains material which is marked as (ostensibly) quoted from elsewhere; in narrative, this element is used to mark direct or indirect speech; in dictionaries, it may be used to mark real or contrived examples of usage; in manuscript descriptions or other metadata, to mark extracts quoted from the source being documented.

**Class:** *model.qLike*: *model.msItemPart*: *att.ascribed*

**Declaration**

```
element q
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.ascribed.attribute.who,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute direct { "true" | "false" | "unknown" }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.ascribed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.ascribed.attribute.who»

### Example

```
And so, as Tiny Tim observed,
<q type="speech">God Bless Us, Every One!</q>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.190 <quotation>

specifies editorial practice adopted with respect to quotation marks in the original.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

Declaration

```
element quotation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  attribute marks { "none" | "some" | "all" }?,
  attribute form { "data" | "rend" | "std" | "nonstd" | "unknown" }?,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<quotation marks="none" form="rend">
  <p>No quote marks have been retained. Instead, the
    <att>rend</att> attribute on the <gi>q</gi> element is used
    to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according
    to the following list:
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>dq</label>
      <item>double quotes, open and close</item>
      <label>sq</label>
      <item>single quotes, open and close</item>
      <label>dash</label>
      <item>long dash open, no close</item>
      <label>dg</label>
      <item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
    </list>
  </p>
</quotation>
```

### Example

```
<quotation marks="none" form="rend">
  <p>No quote marks have been retained. Instead, the <att>rend</att> attribute on the
    <gi>q</gi> element is used to specify what kinds of quotation mark was used, according to
    the following list: <list type="gloss">
      <label>dq</label>
      <item>double quotes, open and close</item>
      <label>sq</label>
      <item>single quotes, open and close</item>
      <label>dash</label>
      <item>long dash open, no close</item>
      <label>dg</label>
      <item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
    </list>
  </p>
</quotation>
```

### Example

```
<quotation marks="all" form="std">
  <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and are represented by standard entity
    references</p>
</quotation>
```

### Example

```
<quotation marks="none" form="rend">
  <p>Aucune marque de citation n'a été retenue. On a utilisé à la place l'attribut <att>rend</att> de l'é
    <list type="gloss">
      <label>dq</label>
```

```

<item>guillemets doubles, ouvrants et fermants</item>
<label>sq</label>
<item>guillemets simples, ouvrant et fermant</item>
<label>dash</label>
<item>tiret long ouvert, non fermé</item>
<label>dg</label>
<item>double guillemets, open and close</item>
</list>
</p>
</quotation>

```

### Example

```

<quotation marks="all" form="std">
  <p>Toutes les marques de citation retenues dans le texte sont représentées par des entités de référence r
</p>
</quotation>

```

### Example

```

<quotation marks="all" form="std">
  <p>All quotation marks are retained in the text and
    are represented by standard entity references</p>
</quotation>

```

### Module: header

## 2.191 <quote>

(quotation) contains a phrase or passage attributed by the narrator or author to some agency external to the text.

**Class:** *model.qLike: model.quoteLike*

### Declaration

```

element quote
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.specialPara}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
Lexicography has shown little sign of being affected by the
work of followers of J.R. Firth, probably best summarized
in his slogan, <quote>You shall know a word by the company it
keeps</quote>
<ref>(Firth, 1957)</ref>
```

**Note:** If a bibliographic citation is supplied for the source of a quotation, the two may be grouped using the <cit> element.

**Module:** core

### 2.192 <recording>

(recording event) details of an audio or video recording event used as the source of a spoken text, either directly or from a public broadcast.

**Class:** *att.declarable*

**Declaration**

```
element recording
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  attribute type { "audio" | "video" }?,
  attribute dur { data.duration }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.recordingPart* )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```

<recording type="audio" dur="P30M">
  <equipment>
    <p>Recorded on a Sony TR444 walkman by unknown participants; remastered
      to digital tape at <placeName>Borehamwood Studios</placeName> by
      <orgName>Transcription Services Inc</orgName>.</p>
    </equipment>
  </recording>

```

### Example

```

<recording type="audio" dur="P10M">
  <equipment>
    <p>Recorded from FM Radio to digital tape</p>
  </equipment>
  <broadcast>
    <bibl>
      <title>Interview on foreign policy</title>
      <author>BBC Radio 5</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewer</resp>
        <name>Robin Day</name>
      </respStmt>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewee</resp>
        <name>Margaret Thatcher</name>
      </respStmt>
      <series>
        <title>The World Tonight</title>
      </series>
      <note>First broadcast on <date value="1989-11-27">27 Nov 89</date>
      </note>
    </bibl>
  </broadcast>
</recording>

```

## 2 ELEMENTS DEFINED

---

### Example

```
<recording type="audio" dur="P30M">
  <equipment>
    <p>Enregistré sur walkman Sony TR444 par des opérateurs inconnus ; remasterisé sur bande numérique aux
      <orgName>Transcription Services Inc</orgName>.
    </p>
  </equipment>
</recording>
```

### Example

```
<recording type="audio" dur="P10M">
  <equipment>
    <p>Enregistrement numérique sur bande d'une radio FM</p>
  </equipment>
  <broadcast>
    <bibl>
      <title>Interview de politique étrangère</title>
      <author>BBC Radio 5</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewer</resp>
        <name>Robin Day</name>
      </respStmt>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewée</resp>
        <name>Margaret Thatcher</name>
      </respStmt>
      <series>
        <title>The World Tonight</title>
      </series>
      <note>Première diffusion le <date value="1989-11-27">27 novembre 1989</date>
      </note>
    </bibl>
  </broadcast>
</recording>
```

### Example

```
<recording type="audio" dur="P10M">
  <equipment>
    <p>Recorded from FM Radio to digital tape</p>
  </equipment>
  <broadcast>
    <bibl>
      <title>Interview on foreign policy</title>
      <author>BBC Radio 5</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewer</resp>
        <name>Robin Day</name>
      </respStmt>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>interviewee</resp>
        <name>Margaret Thatcher</name>
      </respStmt>
      <series>
        <title>The World Tonight</title>
      </series>
      <note>First broadcast on
        <date value="1989-11-27">27 Nov 89</date>
      </note>
    </bibl>
  </broadcast>
</recording>
```

### Module: header

#### 2.193 <recordingStmt>

(recording statement) describes a set of recordings used in transcription of a spoken text.

**Class:** *model.sourceDescPart*

**Declaration**

```

element recordingStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.pLike+ | recording+ )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Module:** header

### 2.194 <ref>

defines a reference to another location, possibly modified by additional text or comment.

**Class:** *model.ptrLike: att.pointing: att.declaring*

Declaration

```
element ref
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.pointing.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.pointing.attribute.type,
  att.pointing.attribute.evaluate,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  ( attribute target { data.pointers } | attribute cRef { data.pointers } )?,
  macro.paraContent }
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.pointing**att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.pointing.attribute.type»

«att.pointing.attribute.evaluate»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

**Choice:** **target** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying one or more URI References

**cRef** specifies the destination of the reference by supplying a canonical reference from a scheme defined in a refsDecl element in the TEI header

### Example

```
<ref target="#s234">
  See especially the second sentence</ref>
See also <ref>s.v. <term>locution</term>
</ref>.>
```

**Note:** The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

**Module:** core

## 2.195 <refsDecl>

(references declaration) specifies how canonical references are constructed for this text.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart: att.declarable*

Declaration

```
element refsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  attribute doctype { data.name }?,
  ( model.pLike+ | cRefPattern+ | state+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$.
</refsDecl>
```

This example is a formal representation for the referencing scheme described informally in the following example.

### Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the <att>n</att> attribute on the
    highest level <gi>div</gi> element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential number
    of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon followed by the sequential number of the
    next (and lowest) level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

### Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="([A-Za-z0-9]+) ([0-9]+):([0-9]+)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//body/div[@n='$.
</refsDecl>
```

Cet exemple est la représentation formelle du système de références décrit en prose suivie dans l'exemple suivant.

### Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>Les références sont rendues par concaténation des éléments suivants : la valeur de l'attribut <att>n</
</refsDecl>
```

### Example

```
<refsDecl>
  <p>References are made up by concatenating the value for the
    <att>n</att> attribute on the highest level <gi>div</gi>
    element, followed by a space, followed by the sequential
    number of the next level <gi>div</gi> followed by a colon
    followed by the sequential number of the next (and lowest)
    level <gi>div</gi>.</p>
</refsDecl>
```

Module: header

## 2.196 &lt;reg&gt;

(regularization) contains a reading which has been regularized or normalized in some sense.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit: model.choicePart: att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```

element reg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  macro.paraContent}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

### «att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

#### Example

If all that is desired is to call attention to the fact that the copy text has been regularized, <reg> may be used alone:

```
<q>Please <reg>knock</reg> if an <reg>answer</reg>
    is <reg>required</reg>
</q>
```

#### Example

It is also possible to identify the individual responsible for the regularization, and, using the <choice> and <orig> elements, to provide both the original and regularized readings:

```
<q>Please
  <choice>
    <reg>knock</reg>
    <orig>cnk</orig>
  </choice> if an
  <choice>
    <reg>answer</reg>
    <orig>nsr</orig>
  </choice> is
  <choice>
    <reg>required</reg>
    <orig>reqd</orig>
  </choice>
</q>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.197 <region>

(region) contains the name of an administrative unit such as a state, province, or county, larger than a settlement, but smaller than a country.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart: att.naming: att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element region
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.namingatt.typed* ]

### «att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.naming.attribute.key»  
 «att.typed.attribute.type»  
 «att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```

<placeName>
  <region type="state" n="IL">Illinois</region>
</placeName>

```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.198 <relation>

(relationship) describes any kind of relationship or linkage amongst a specified group of participants.

**Class:** *model.personLike: att.dateable: att.editLike: att.naming*

**Declaration**

```

element relation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dateable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,

```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
att.dataable.attribute.from,
att.dataable.attribute.to,
att.editLike.attribute.cert,
att.editLike.attribute.resp,
att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
att.naming.attribute.key,
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
attribute name { data.enumerated },
attribute passive { data.pointers }?,
( attribute active { data.pointers } | attribute mutual { data.pointers } )?,
desc?
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dataableatt.editLikeatt.naming*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataable.attribute.from»

«att.dataable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<relation
  type="social"
  name="supervisor"
  active="#p1"
  passive="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

### Example

```
<relation type="personal" name="friends" mutual="#p2 #p3 #p4"/>
```

**Note:** Only one of the attributes **active** and **mutual** may be supplied; the attribute **passive** may be supplied only if the attribute **active** is supplied. Not all of these constraints can be enforced in all schema languages.

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.199 <rendition>

(rendition) supplies information about the intended rendition of one or more elements.

### Declaration

```
element rendition
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Note:** The present release of these Guidelines does not specify the content of this element in any further detail. It may be used to hold a description of the default rendition to be associated with the specified element, expressed in running prose, or in some more formal language such as CSS.

**Module:** header

### 2.200 <residence>

(residence) describes a person's present or past places of residence.

**Class:** *model.persStateLike*: *att.dataable*: *att.editLike*: *att.naming*

**Declaration**

```

element residence
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  macro.phraseSeq}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.dataable**att.editLike**att.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
«att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»  
«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»  
«att.dataable.attribute.from»  
«att.dataable.attribute.to»  
«att.editLike.attribute.cert»  
«att.editLike.attribute.resp»  
«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»  
«att.naming.attribute.key»

**Example**

```
<residence>Childhood in East Africa and long term  
resident of Glasgow, Scotland.</residence>
```

**Example**

```
<residence notAfter="1997">Mbeni estate, Dzukumura region,  
Matabele land</residence>  
<residence notBefore="1903" notAfter="1996">  
  <placeName>  
    <settlement>Glasgow</settlement>  
    <region>Scotland</region>  
  </placeName>  
</residence>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2 ELEMENTS DEFINED

---

### 2.201 <resp>

contains a phrase describing the nature of a person's intellectual responsibility.

Declaration

```
element resp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>compiler</resp>
  <name>Edward Child</name>
</respStmt>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.202 &lt;respStmt&gt;

(statement of responsibility) supplies a statement of responsibility for someone responsible for the intellectual content of a text, edition, recording, or series, where the specialized elements for authors, editors, etc. do not suffice or do not apply.

**Class:** *model.respLike: model.recordingPart*

Declaration

```

element respStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  (
    ( resp, resp*, model.nameLike.agent+ )
    | ( ( model.nameLike.agent ), model.nameLike.agent*, resp+ )
  )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>transcribed from original ms</resp>
  <persName>Claus Huitfeldt</persName>
</respStmt>
```

### Example

```
<respStmt>
  <resp>converted to SGML encoding</resp>
  <name>Alan Morrison</name>
</respStmt>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.203 <revisionDesc>

(revision description) summarizes the revision history for a file.

**Declaration**

```
element revisionDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( list | change+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<revisionDesc>
  <change date="1991-11-11" who="#EMB">
    deleted chapter 10
  </change>
</revisionDesc>
```

### Example

```
<revisionDesc>
  <change date="1991-11-11" who="#EMB">Chapitre 10 supprimé</change>
</revisionDesc>
```

**Note:** Record changes with most recent changes at the top of the list.

**Module:** header

## 2.204 <roleName>

(roleName) contains a name component which indicates that the referent has a particular role or position in society, such as an official title or rank.

**Class:** *model.persNamePart: att.personal*

**Declaration**

```
element roleName
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.personal.attribute.type,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.personal* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.personal.attribute.type»

«att.personal.attribute.full»

«att.personal.attribute.sort»

### Example

```
<persName>
  <forename>William</forename>
  <surname>Poulteny</surname>
  <roleName>Earl of Bath</roleName>
</persName>
```

**Note:** A `<roleName>` may be distinguished from an `<addName>` by virtue of the fact that, like a title, it typically exists independently of its holder.

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.205 `<rs>`

(referencing string) contains a general purpose name or referring string.

**Class:** *att.naming: model.nameLike*

**Declaration**

```
element rs
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<q>My dear <rs type="person">Mr. Bennet</rs>, </q>
said <rs type="person">his lady</rs> to him one day,
<q>have you heard that <rs type="place">Netherfield
  Park</rs> is let at last?</q>
```

**Module:** core

## 2.206 <s>

(s-unit) contains a sentence-like division of a text.

**Class:** *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*

**Declaration**

```
element s
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
att.segLike.attribute.type,  
att.segLike.attribute.function,  
att.segLike.attribute.part,  
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.segLike.attribute.type»

«att.segLike.attribute.function»

«att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```
<s>When are you leaving?</s>  
<s>Tomorrow.</s>
```

**Note:** May contain character data, phrase-level and segmentation class elements, other than <s>. The <s> element may be used to mark orthographic sentences, or any other segmentation of a text, provided that the segmentation is end-to-end, complete, and non-nesting. For other kinds of segmentation, the <seg> element should be used.

**Module:** analysis

## 2.207 &lt;salute&gt;

(salutation) contains a salutation or greeting prefixed to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text, or the salutation in the closing of a letter, preface, etc.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper*

Declaration

```
element salute
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<salute>To all courteous mindes, that will voutchsafe the
readinge.</salute>
```

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.208 <samplingDecl>

(sampling declaration) contains a prose description of the rationale and methods used in sampling texts in the creation of a corpus or collection.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart: att.declarable*

Declaration

```
element samplingDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Note:** This element records all information about systematic inclusion or omission of portions of the text, whether a reflection of sampling procedures in the pure sense or of systematic omission of material deemed either too difficult to transcribe or not of sufficient interest.

**Module:** header

## 2.209 &lt;scriptStmt&gt;

(script statement) contains a citation giving details of the script used for a spoken text.

**Class:** *model.sourceDescPart: att.declarable*

Declaration

```

element scriptStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.pLike+ | model.biblLike )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Module:** header

### 2.210 <second>

(second) the second component of a structured time-expression.

**Class:** *model.datePart: att.datePart*

**Declaration**

```
element second
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

**Example**

```

At the third stroke the time sponsored by Accurist
will be
<time value="18:21:30">
  <hour>six</hour>
  <minute>twenty-one</minute> and
    <second>thirty</second> seconds
</time>

```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.211 <seg>

(arbitrary segment) contains any arbitrary phrase-level unit of text (including other seg elements).

**Class:** *model.blockLike*: *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*: *model.choicePart*

**Declaration**

```

element seg
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.segLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.segLike.attribute.type,
  att.segLike.attribute.function,
  att.segLike.attribute.part,
  attribute subtype { data.word }?,
  macro.paraContent}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.segLike.attribute.type»

«att.segLike.attribute.function»

«att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```
<seg>When are you leaving?</seg>
<seg>Tomorrow.</seg>
```

### Example

```
<s>
  <seg rend="caps" type="typographic part-line">So father's only</seg>
  glory was the ballfield.
</s>
```

### Example

```
<seg type="preamble">
  <seg>Sigmund,
    <seg type="patronym">the son of Volsung</seg>,
    was a king in Frankish country.</seg>
  <seg>Sinfiotli was the eldest of his sons ...</seg>
  <seg>Borghild, Sigmund's wife, had a brother ...</seg>
</seg>
```

**Note:** The `<seg>` element may be used at the encoder's discretion to mark any segments of the text of interest for processing. One use of the element is to mark text features for which no appropriate markup is otherwise defined — i.e. as a simple extension mechanism. Another use is to provide an identifier for some segment which is to be pointed at by some other element — i.e. to provide a target, or a part of a target, for a `<ptr>` or other similar element.

**Module:** linking

## 2.212 <segmentation>

describes the principles according to which the text has been segmented, for example into sentences, tone-units, graphemic strata, etc.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

**Declaration**

```
element segmentation
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.declarable.attribute.default,
model.pLike+
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Module:** header

## 2.213 <series>

(series information) contains information about the series in which a book or other bibliographic item has appeared.

**Class:** *model.biblPart*

**Declaration**

```

element series
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
}

```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
(
  text
  | model.gLike      | title      | editor      | respStmt      | biblScope      | model.global
)*
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Module:** core

### 2.214 <seriesStmt>

(series statement) groups information about the series, if any, to which a publication belongs.

**Declaration**

```

element seriesStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( title+, ( idno | respStmt )* ) )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Machine-Readable Texts for the Study of Indian
    Literature</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>ed. by</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <idno type="vol">1.2</idno>
  <idno type="ISSN">0 345 6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

### Example

```
<seriesStmt>
  <title>Textes électroniques pour l'étude de la littérature indienne</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>éd. par</resp>
    <name>Jan Gonda</name>
  </respStmt>
  <idno type="vol">1.2</idno>
  <idno type="ISSN">0345-6789</idno>
</seriesStmt>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.215 <setting>

(setting) describes one particular setting in which a language interaction takes place.

**Class:** *att.ascribed*

**Declaration**

```
element setting
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.ascribed.attribute.who,
  (
    model.pLike+
    | (
      model.nameLike.agent          | model.dateLike          | model.timeLike          | model.settingPart
    )
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.ascribed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.ascribed.attribute.who»

**Example**

```
<setting who="#p1">
  <name>New York City, US</name>
  <date>1989</date>
  <locale>on a park bench</locale>
  <activity>feeding birds</activity>
</setting>
```

**Note:** If the **who** attribute is not supplied, the setting is assumed to be that of all participants in the language interaction.

**Module:** corpus

**2.216 <settingDesc>**

(setting description) describes the setting or settings within which a language interaction takes place, either as a prose description or as a series of setting elements.

**Class:** *model.profileDescPart*: *att.declarable*

**Declaration**

```
element settingDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.pLike+ | setting+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<settingDesc>
  <p>Texts recorded in the Canadian Parliament building
    in Ottawa, between April and November 1988</p>
</settingDesc>
```

**Note:** May contain a prose description organized as paragraphs, or a series of <setting> elements.

**Module:** corpus

### 2.217 <settlement>

contains the name of a settlement such as a city, town, or village identified as a single geo-political or administrative unit.

**Class:** *model.placeNamePart*: *att.naming*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element settlement
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.naming**att.typed* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```
<placeName>
  <settlement type="town">Glasgow</settlement>
  <region>Scotland</region>
</placeName>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.218 <sex>

specifies the sex of a person.

**Class:** *model.persTraitLike: att.editLike: att.dataable*

**Declaration**

```
element sex
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  attribute value { data.sex }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLikeatt.dataable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.dataable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataable.attribute.from»

«att.dataable.attribute.to»

### Example

```
<sex value="2">female</sex>
```

**Module:** namesdates

## 2.219 &lt;sic&gt;

contains text reproduced although apparently incorrect or inaccurate.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit: model.choicePart*

**Declaration**

```
element sic
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
for his nose was as sharp as a pen, and <sic>a Table</sic> of green fields.
```

**Example**

If all that is desired is to call attention to the apparent problem in the copy text, <sic> may be used alone:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past
    now -- how <sic>we can</sic> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

### Example

It is also possible, using the `<choice>` and `<corr>` elements, to provide a correct reading and to identify the individual responsible for the correction:

```
I don't know, Juan. It's so far in the past
    now -- how <choice>
    <sic>we can</sic>
    <corr resp="#msm">can we</corr>
    </choice> prove or disprove anyone's theories?
```

### Example

```
for his nose was as sharp as a pen,
and <choice>
    <sic>a Table</sic>
    <corr resp="#gifford">a' babbled</corr>
    </choice> of green fields.
```

**Module:** core

### 2.220 `<signed>`

(signature) contains the closing salutation, etc., appended to a foreword, dedicatory epistle, or other division of a text.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper.bottom*

**Declaration**

```
element signed
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<signed>Thine to command <name>Humph. Moseley</name>
</signed>
```

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.221 <soCalled>

(so called) contains a word or phrase for which the author or narrator indicates a disclaiming of responsibility, for example by the use of scare quotes or italics.

**Class:** *model.hiLike*

**Declaration**

```
element soCalled
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

To edge his way along the crowded paths of life, warning all human sympathy to keep its distance, was what the knowing ones call <soCalled>nuts</soCalled> to Scrooge.

**Module:** core

### 2.222 <socecStatus>

(socio-economic status) contains an informal description of a person's perceived social or economic status.

**Class:** *model.persTraitLike: att.dataable: att.editLike: att.naming*

**Declaration**

```

element socecStatus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.naming.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.dataable.attribute.notBefore,
  att.dataable.attribute.notAfter,
  att.dataable.attribute.from,
  att.dataable.attribute.to,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  att.naming.attribute.key,
  attribute scheme { data.pointer }?,
  attribute code { data.pointer }?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datableatt.editLikeatt.naming*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.datable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.datable.attribute.from»

«att.datable.attribute.to»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.naming.attribute.key»

### Example

```
<socecStatus scheme="#rg" code="#ab1"/>
```

### Example

```
<socecStatus>Status AB1 in the RG Classification scheme</socecStatus>
```

**Note:** The content of this element may be used as an alternative to the more formal specification made possible by its attributes; it may also be used to supplement the formal specification with commentary or clarification.

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.223 <sourceDesc>

supplies a description of the source text(s) from which an electronic text was derived or generated.

**Class:** *att.declarable*

Declaration

```
element sourceDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.pLike+ | ( listBibl ) | ( model.biblLike | model.sourceDescPart )+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

**Example**

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>No source: created in machine-readable form.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

### Example

```
<sourceDesc>
  <p>Sans source : créé sous forme électronique.</p>
</sourceDesc>
```

### Module: header

## 2.224 <sp>

(speech) An individual speech in a performance text, or a passage presented as such in a prose or verse text.

**Class:** *model.divPart: att.ascribed*

### Declaration

```
element sp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.ascribed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.ascribed.attribute.who,
  (
    model.global*,
    ( speaker, model.global* )?,
    (
      ( model.lLike | lg | model.pLike | model.blockLike | model.stageLike ),
      model.global*
    )+
  )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.ascribed*]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.ascribed.attribute.who»

### Example

```

<sp>
  <speaker>The reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>I do not think I have named a single unpresentable fish.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>Mr Gryll</speaker>
  <p>Bream, Doctor: there is not much to be said for bream.</p>
</sp>
<sp>
  <speaker>The Reverend Doctor Opimiam</speaker>
  <p>On the contrary, sir, I think there is much to be said for him.
  In the first place....</p>
  <p>Fish, Miss Gryll -- I could discourse to you on fish by the hour:
  but for the present I will forbear...</p>
</sp>

```

**Note:** Lines or paragraphs, stage directions, and phrase-level elements. The **who** attribute on this element may be used either in addition to the `<speaker>` element or as an alternative.

**Module:** core

### 2.225 <span>

(span) associates an interpretative annotation directly with a span of text.

**Class:** *att.interpLike: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```

element span
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.interpLike.attribute.resp,
  att.interpLike.attribute.type,
}

```

```
att.interpLike.attribute.inst,
attribute from { data.pointer },
attribute to { data.pointer }?,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.interpLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.interpLike.attribute.resp»

«att.interpLike.attribute.type»

«att.interpLike.attribute.inst»

### Example

```
<span
  resp="#TMA"
  type="structure"
  from="#p2"
  to="#p4">aftermath</span>
```

**Module:** analysis

### 2.226 <spanGrp>

(span group) collects together span tags.

**Class:** *att.interpLike: model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```
element spanGrp
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.interpLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.interpLike.attribute.resp,
  att.interpLike.attribute.type,
  att.interpLike.attribute.inst,
  span*
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.interpLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.interpLike.attribute.resp»

«att.interpLike.attribute.type»

**«att.interpLike.attribute.inst»****Example**

```
<spanGrp resp="#TMA" type="collection of structural units">
  <span type="introduction" from="#s1" to="#s3"/>
  <span type="conflict" from="#s4a"/>
  <span type="climax" from="#s4b"/>
  <span type="revenge" from="#s5" to="#sx"/>
  <span type="reconciliation" from="#nil1"/>
  <span type="aftermath" from="#p2" to="#p4"/>
</spanGrp>
```

**Note:** Any number of <span> elements.

**Module:** analysis

**2.227 <speaker>**

A specialized form of heading or label, giving the name of one or more speakers in a dramatic text or fragment.

**Declaration**

```
element speaker
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlid»**

**«att.global.attribute.n»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmllang»**

**«att.global.attribute.rend»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.next»**

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<sp who="#ni #rsa">
  <speaker>Nancy and Robert</speaker>
  <stage type="delivery">(speaking simultaneously)</stage>
  <p>The future? ...</p>
</sp>
```

**Note:** The **who** attribute on the `<sp>` element may be used either in addition to this element or as an alternative.

**Module:** core

### 2.228 `<sponsor>`

specifies the name of a sponsoring organization or institution.

**Declaration**

```
element sponsor
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<sponsor>Association for Computers and the Humanities</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Computational Linguistics</sponsor>
<sponsor>Association for Literary and Linguistic Computing</sponsor>
```

**Note:** Sponsors give their intellectual authority to a project; they are to be distinguished from funders, who provide the funding but do not necessarily take intellectual responsibility.

**Module:** header

## 2.229 <stage>

(stage direction) contains any kind of stage direction within a dramatic text or fragment.

**Class:** *model.stageLike*

**Declaration**

```
element stage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.specialPara}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<stage type="setting">A curtain being drawn.</stage>
<stage type="setting">Music</stage>
<stage type="entrance">Enter Husband as being thrown off his
horse.</stage>
<stage type="exit">Exit pursued by a bear.</stage>
<stage type="business">He quickly takes the stone out.</stage>
<stage type="delivery">To Lussurioso.</stage>
<stage type="novelistic">Having had enough, and embarrassed for
the family.</stage>
<stage type="modifier">Disguised as Ansaldo.</stage>
<stage type="location">At a window.</stage>
<stage rend="inline" type="delivery">Aside.</stage>
```

**Module:** core

### 2.230 <state>

specifies one component of a canonical reference defined by the milestone method.

**Declaration**

```
element state
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute ed { data.code }?,
  attribute unit { data.enumerated },
  attribute length { data.count }?,
  attribute delim { text }?,
  empty
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<state unit="book" delim=":"/>
<state unit="line" length="4"/>
```

**Module:** header

## 2.231 <stdVals>

(Standard values) specifies the format used when standardized date or number values are supplied.

**Class:** *att.declarable: model.editorialDeclPart*

**Declaration**

```
element stdVals
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  model.pLike+
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»  
 «att.global.attribute.n»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»  
 «att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<stdVals>
  <p>All integer numbers are left-filled with zeroes to 8 digits.</p>
</stdVals>
```

### Example

```
<stdVals>
  <p>Tous les entiers relatifs sont complétés à gauche avec des zéros jusqu'à concurrence de huit chiffres
</stdVals>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.232 <street>

(street) a full street address including any name or number identifying a building as well as the name of the street or route on which it is located.

**Class:** *model.addrPart*

**Declaration**

```
element street
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
```

```
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<street>via della Faggiola, 36</street>
```

### Example

```
<street>
  <name>Duntaggin</name>, 110 Southmoor Road</street>
```

**Note:** The order and presentation of house names and numbers and street names, etc., may vary considerably in different countries. The encoding should reflect the order which is appropriate in the country concerned.

**Module:** core

### 2.233 <surname>

(surname) contains a family (inherited) name, as opposed to a given, baptismal, or nick name.

**Class:** *model.persNamePart*: *att.personal*

**Declaration**

```
element surname
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.personal.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.personal.attribute.type,
  att.personal.attribute.full,
  att.personal.attribute.sort,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.personal* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.personal.attribute.type»

«att.personal.attribute.full»

**«att.personal.attribute.sort»****Example**

```
<surname type="combine">St John Stevas</surname>
```

**Module:** namesdates

**2.234 <tagUsage>**

(tagUsage) supplies information about the usage of a specific element within a text.

**Declaration**

```
element tagUsage
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute gi { data.name },
  attribute occurs { data.count }?,
  attribute withId { data.count }?,
  attribute render { data.pointer }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlid»**

**«att.global.attribute.n»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmllang»**

**«att.global.attribute.rend»**

**«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.next»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»**

**«att.global.linking.attribute.select»**

### «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

#### Example

```
<tagUsage
  gi="hi"
  occurs="28"
  withId="2"
  render="#it">
  Used only to mark English words italicised in the copy text
</tagUsage>
```

#### Example

```
<tagUsage
  gi="hi"
  occurs="28"
  withId="2"
  render="#it"> Utilisé seulement pour marquer les mots anglais en italiques dans le texte de la copie.</tag>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.235 <tagsDecl>

(tagging declaration) provides detailed information about the tagging applied to an SGML or XML document.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart*

**Declaration**

```
element tagsDecl
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( rendition*, namespace* )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

**«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»**  
**«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»**  
**«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»**  
**«att.global.linking.attribute.next»**  
**«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»**  
**«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»**  
**«att.global.linking.attribute.select»**  
**«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»**

### Example

```

<tagsDecl>
  <rendition xml:id="rend-it">to be rendered in italic font</rendition>
  <namespace name="http://www.tei-c.org/ns/1.0">
    <tagUsage gi="hi" occurs="467" render="#rend-it"/>
    <tagUsage gi="title" occurs="45" render="#rend-it"/>
  </namespace>
  <namespace name="http://docbook.org/ns/docbook">
    <tagUsage gi="para" occurs="10"/>
  </namespace>
</tagsDecl>

```

### Module: header

## 2.236 <taxonomy>

(taxonomy) defines a typology used to classify texts either implicitly, by means of a bibliographic citation, or explicitly by a structured taxonomy.

### Declaration

```

element taxonomy
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( model.glossLike* | category+ | ( ( model.biblLike ), category* ) )
}

```

### Attributes: Global attributes only

**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»**  
**«att.global.attribute.xmlid»**  
**«att.global.attribute.n»**

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<taxonomy xml:id="tax.b">
  <bibl>Brown Corpus</bibl>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.a">
    <catDesc>Press Reportage</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a1">
      <catDesc>Daily</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a2">
      <catDesc>Sunday</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a3">
      <catDesc>National</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a4">
      <catDesc>Provincial</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a5">
      <catDesc>Political</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.a6">
      <catDesc>Sports</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
  <category xml:id="tax.b.d">
    <catDesc>Religion</catDesc>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d1">
      <catDesc>Books</catDesc>
    </category>
    <category xml:id="tax.b.d2">
      <catDesc>Periodicals and tracts</catDesc>
    </category>
  </category>
</taxonomy>
```

Module: header

**2.237 <teiCorpus>**

(TEI corpus) contains the whole of a TEI encoded corpus, comprising a single corpus header and one or more TEI elements, each containing a single text header and a text.

**Declaration**

```

element teiCorpus
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute version { xsd:decimal }?,
  ( teiHeader, ( TEI | teiCorpus )+ )
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```
<teiCorpus>
  <teiHeader/>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader/>
    <text/>
  </TEI>
  <TEI>
    <teiHeader/>
    <text/>
  </TEI>
</teiCorpus>
```

**Note:** Must contain one TEI header for the corpus, and a series of <TEI> elements, one for each text. This element is mandatory when applicable.

**Module:** core

### 2.238 <teiHeader>

(TEI Header) supplies the descriptive and declarative information making up an electronic title page prefixed to every TEI-conformant text.

**Declaration**

```
element teiHeader
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  ( fileDesc, model.headerPart*, revisionDesc? )
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<teiHeader>
  <fileDesc>
    <titleStmt>
      <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) in electronic form</title>
      <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>Originally prepared by</resp>
        <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
      </respStmt>
      <respStmt>
        <resp>Revised and edited by</resp>
        <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
      </respStmt>
    </titleStmt>
    <publicationStmt>
      <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
      <address>
        <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
      </address>
      <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
      <availability>
        <p>Freely available on a non-commercial basis.</p>
      </availability>
      <date value="1968">1968</date>
    </publicationStmt>
    <sourceDesc>
      <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, prepared by Charlton Hinman
        (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
    </sourceDesc>
  </fileDesc>
  <encodingDesc>
    <projectDesc>
      <p>Originally prepared for use in the production of a series of
        old-spelling concordances in 1968, this text was extensively
        checked and revised for use during the editing of the new Oxford
        Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
    </projectDesc>
    <editorialDecl>
      <correction>
        <p>Turned letters are silently corrected.</p>
      </correction>
      <normalization>
        <p>Original spelling and typography is retained, except
          that long s and ligatured forms are not encoded.</p>
      </normalization>
    </editorialDecl>
    <refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF">
      <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n=' $1' ]/div2/[@n=' $2' ])">
        <p>A reference is created by assembling the following,
          in the reverse order as that listed here:
          <list>
            <item>the <att>n</att> value of the preceding <gi>lb</gi>
            </item>
            <item>a period</item>
            <item>the <att>n</att> value of the ancestor <gi>div2</gi>
            </item>
            <item>a space</item>
            <item>the <att>n</att> value of the parent <gi>div1</gi>
            </item>
```

```

    </list>
  </p>
</cRefPattern>
</refsDecl>
</encodingDesc>
<revisionDesc>
  <list>
    <item>
      <date value="1989-04-12">12 Apr 89</date> Last checked by CAC</item>
    <item>
      <date value="1989-03-01">1 Mar 89</date> LB made new file</item>
    </list>
  </revisionDesc>
</teiHeader>

```

### Example

```

<teiHeader>
<fileDesc>
  <titleStmt>
    <title>Shakespeare: the first folio (1623) sous forme électronique</title>
    <author>Shakespeare, William (1564-1616)</author>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Préparé par</resp>
      <name>Trevor Howard-Hill</name>
    </respStmt>
    <respStmt>
      <resp>Révisé et édité par</resp>
      <name>Christine Avern-Carr</name>
    </respStmt>
  </titleStmt>
  <publicationStmt>
    <distributor>Oxford Text Archive</distributor>
    <address>
      <addrLine>13 Banbury Road, Oxford OX2 6NN, UK</addrLine>
    </address>
    <idno type="OTA">119</idno>
    <availability>
      <p>Disponible gratuitement à des fins non commerciales.</p>
    </availability>
    <date value="1968">1968</date>
  </publicationStmt>
  <sourceDesc>
    <bibl>The first folio of Shakespeare, préparé par Charlton Hinman
      (The Norton Facsimile, 1968)</bibl>
  </sourceDesc>
</fileDesc>
<encodingDesc>
<projectDesc>
  <p>Préparé pour la production d'une collection de concordances old-spelling en 1968, ce texte a été pro
    Shakespeare (Wells and Taylor, 1989).</p>
</projectDesc>
<editorialDecl>
  <correction>
    <p>Les caractères bloqués sont corrigés sans commentaire.</p>
  </correction>
  <normalization>
    <p>L'orthographe et la typographie originales sont conservées, à l'exception des s longs et des ligatu
  </normalization>
</editorialDecl>
<refsDecl xml:id="ASLREF-FR">
  <cRefPattern matchPattern="(\S+) ([^.]*)\.(.*)" replacementPattern="#xpath(//div1[@n='$1']/div2/[@n='$2']
    <p>Une référence est créée en assemblant les éléments suivants dans l'ordre inverse de la liste suivan
      <list>
        <item>la valeur de l'attribut <att>n</att> de l'élément <gi>lb</gi> précédent.</item>
        <item>un point</item>
        <item>la valeur de l'attribut <att>n</att> de l'élément <gi>div2</gi> ancêtre.</item>
        <item>un espace</item>
        <item>la valeur de l'attribut <att>n</att> de l'élément <gi>div1</gi> parent.</item>
      </list>
    </p>
  </cRefPattern>

```

```

    </refsDecl>
  </encodingDesc>
  <revisionDesc>
    <list>
      <item>
        <date value="1989-04-12">12 avril 1989</date> Dernière vérification par CAC</item>
      <item>
        <date value="1989-03-01">1er mars 1989</date> Nouveau fichier par LB</item>
      </list>
    </revisionDesc>
  </teiHeader>

```

**Note:** One of the few elements unconditionally required in any TEI document.

**Module:** header

## 2.239 <term>

contains a single-word, multi-word, or symbolic designation which is regarded as a technical term.

**Class:** *model.hiLike*: *att.declaring*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```

element term
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declaring.attribute.decls,
  att.typed.attribute.type,
  att.typed.attribute.subtype,
  attribute sortKey { data.word }?,
  ( attribute target { data.pointer } | attribute cRef { data.pointer } )?,
  macro.phraseSeq
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring**att.typed* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.corresp*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.synch*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs*»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

A computational device that infers structure from grammatical strings of words is known as a `<term>parser</term>`, and much of the history of NLP over the last 20 years has been occupied with the design of parsers.

### Example

We may define `<term xml:id="TDPV" rend="sc">discoursal point of view</term>` as `<gloss target="#TDPV">the relationship, expressed through discourse structure, between the implied author or some other addresser, and the fiction.</gloss>`

**Note:** This element is used to supply the form under which an index entry is to be made for the location of a parent `<index>` element. In formal terminological work, there is frequently discussion over whether terms must be atomic or may include multi-word lexical items, symbolic designations, or phraseological units. The `<term>` element may be used to mark any of these. No position is taken on the philosophical issue of what a term can be; the looser definition simply allows the `<term>` element to be used by practitioners of any persuasion. The **target** and **cRef** attributes are mutually exclusive.

**Module:** core

## 2.240 `<text>`

contains a single text of any kind, whether unitary or composite, for example a poem or drama, a collection of essays, a novel, a dictionary, or a corpus sample.

**Class:** *model.inter: att.declaring*

Declaration

```
element text
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declaring.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.declaring.attribute.decls,
(
  model.global*,
  ( front, model.global* )?,
  ( body | group ),
  model.global*,
  ( back, model.global* )?
)
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declaring* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declaring.attribute.decls»

### Example

```

<text>
  <front>
    <docTitle>
      <titlePart>Autumn Haze</titlePart>
    </docTitle>
  </front>
  <body>
    <l>Is it a dragonfly or a maple leaf</l>
    <l>That settles softly down upon the water?</l>
  </body>
</text>

```

### Example

The body of a text may be replaced by a group of nested texts, as in the following schematic:

```
<text>
  <front/>
  <group>
    <text>
      <front/>
      <body/>
      <back/>
    </text>
  </text>
</group>
</text>
```

**Note:** This element may also be used to represent embedded texts, as when one narrative is contained by another.

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.241 <textClass>

(text classification) groups information which describes the nature or topic of a text in terms of a standard classification scheme, thesaurus, etc.

**Class:** *model.profileDescPart*: *att.declarable*

**Declaration**

```
element textClass
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( classCode | catRef | keywords ) *
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#TC1"/>
  <classCode scheme="#DD12">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://www.lcsh.org">
    <list>
      <item>End of the world</item>
      <item>History - philosophy</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

### Example

```
<textClass>
  <catRef target="#TC1"/>
  <classCode scheme="#DD12">001.9</classCode>
  <keywords scheme="http://www.lcsh.org">
    <list>
      <item>Fin du monde</item>
      <item>Histoire - philosophie</item>
    </list>
  </keywords>
</textClass>
```

### Module: header

## 2.242 <textDesc>

(text description) provides a description of a text in terms of its situational parameters.

**Class:** *model.catDescPart*: *model.profileDescPart*: *att.declarable*

### Declaration

```
element textDesc
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.declarable.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.declarable.attribute.default,
  ( model.textDescPart_sequence, purpose+ )
}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.declarable* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.declarable.attribute.default»

### Example

```
<textDesc n="Informal domestic conversation">
  <channel mode="s"/>
  <constitution type="single"/>
  <derivation type="original"/>
  <domain type="domestic"/>
  <factuality type="mixed"/>
  <interaction type="complete" active="plural" passive="many"/>
  <preparedness type="spontaneous"/>
  <purpose type="entertain" degree="high"/>
  <purpose type="inform" degree="medium"/>
</textDesc>
```

**Module:** corpus

### 2.243 <time>

contains a phrase defining a time of day in any format.

**Class:** *model.timeLike*: *att.datePart*: *att.editLike*: *att.dataable*: *att.typed*

**Declaration**

```
element time
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.dataable.attributes,
  att.typed.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
```

```

    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
    att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
    att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
    att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
    att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
    att.global.linking.attribute.next,
    att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
    att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
    att.global.linking.attribute.select,
    att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
    att.datePart.attribute.value,
    att.datePart.attribute.dur,
    att.editLike.attribute.cert,
    att.editLike.attribute.resp,
    att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
    att.dateable.attribute.notBefore,
    att.dateable.attribute.notAfter,
    att.dateable.attribute.from,
    att.dateable.attribute.to,
    att.typed.attribute.type,
    att.typed.attribute.subtype,
    ( text | model.gLike | model.datePart | model.phrase | model.global ) *
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart**att.editLike**att.dateable**att.typed* ]

«*att.global.attribute.xmlspace*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlid*»

«*att.global.attribute.n*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmllang*»

«*att.global.attribute.rend*»

«*att.global.attribute.xmlbase*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.corresp*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.synch*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.next*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.prev*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.exclude*»

«*att.global.linking.attribute.select*»

«*att.global.analytic.attribute.ana*»

«*att.datePart.attribute.value*»

«*att.datePart.attribute.dur*»

«*att.editLike.attribute.cert*»

«*att.editLike.attribute.resp*»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

«att.dataTable.attribute.notBefore»

«att.dataTable.attribute.notAfter»

«att.dataTable.attribute.from»

«att.dataTable.attribute.to»

«att.typed.attribute.type»

«att.typed.attribute.subtype»

### Example

```
As he sat smiling, the quarter struck --
    <time value="11:45:00">the quarter to twelve</time>.
```

**Module:** core

### 2.244 <timeline>

(timeline) provides a set of ordered points in time which can be linked to elements of a spoken text to create a temporal alignment of that text.

**Class:** *model.global.meta*

**Declaration**

```
element timeline
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute origin { data.pointer },
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,
  attribute interval
  {
    xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "regular" | "irregular"
  }?,
  when+
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<timeline xml:id="TL01" origin="#TL-w0" unit="ms">
  <when xml:id="TL-w0" absolute="11:30:00"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w1" interval="unknown" since="#TL-w0"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w2" interval="100" since="#TL-w1"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w3" interval="200" since="#TL-w2"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w4" interval="150" since="#TL-w3"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w5" interval="250" since="#TL-w4"/>
  <when xml:id="TL-w6" interval="100" since="#TL-w5"/>
</timeline>
```

**Note:** one or more points in time, one of which is its origin

**Module:** linking

## 2.245 <title>

contains the full title of a work of any kind.

**Class:** *model.hiLike: model.msItemPart*

**Declaration**

```
element title
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute level { "a" | "m" | "j" | "s" | "u" }?,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paramContent}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<title>La vie mode d'emploi. Romans.</title>
```

### Example

```
<title>Synthese: an international journal for epistemology, methodology  
and history of science</title>
```

### Example

```
<title>Information Technology and the Research Process: Proceedings  
of a conference held at Cranfield Institute of Technology, UK, 18-21  
July 1989</title>
```

### Example

```
<title>Hardy's Tess of the D'Urbervilles: a machine readable edition</title>
```

### Module: core

## 2.246 <titlePage>

(title page) contains the title page of a text, appearing within the front or back matter.

**Class:** *model.frontPart*

**Declaration**

```
element titlePage  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,  
  att.global.attribute.n,  
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,  
  att.global.attribute.rend,
```

```

att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
(
  model.global*,
  ( model.titlepagePart ),
  ( model.titlepagePart | model.global )*
)
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```

<titlePage>
  <docTitle>
    <titlePart type="main">THOMAS OF Reading.</titlePart>
    <titlePart type="alt">OR, The sixe worthy yeomen
      of the West.</titlePart>
  </docTitle>
  <docEdition>Now the fourth time corrected and enlarged</docEdition>
  <byline>By T.D.</byline>
  <figure>
    <head>TP</head>
    <p>Thou shalt labor till thou returne to duste</p>
    <figDesc>Printers Ornament used by TP</figDesc>
  </figure>
  <docImprint>Printed at <name type="place">London</name>
    for <name>T.P.</name>

```

```
<date>1612.</date>
</docImprint>
</titlePage>
```

**Module:** textstructure

### 2.247 <titlePart>

(title part) contains a subsection or division of the title of a work, as indicated on a title page.

**Class:** *model.titlepagePart: model.pLike.front*

**Declaration**

```
element titlePart
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  attribute type { data.enumerated }?,
  macro.paraContent}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

**Example**

```

<docTitle>
  <titlePart type="main">THE FORTUNES
    AND MISFORTUNES Of the FAMOUS
    Moll Flanders, &c.
  </titlePart>
  <titlePart type="desc">Who was BORN in NEWGATE,
    And during a Life of continu'd Variety for
    Threescore Years, besides her Childhood, was
    Twelve Year a <hi>Whore</hi>, five times a <hi>Wife</hi> (wherof
    once to her own Brother) Twelve Year a <hi>Thief,</hi>
    Eight Year a Transported <hi>Felon</hi> in <hi>Virginia</hi>,
    at last grew <hi>Rich</hi>, liv'd <hi>Honest</hi>, and died a
    <hi>Penitent</hi>.</titlePart>
</docTitle>

```

**Module:** textstructure**2.248 <titleStmt>**

(title statement) groups information about the title of a work and those responsible for its intellectual content.

**Declaration**

```

element titleStmt
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  ( title+, ( author | editor | sponsor | funder | principal | respStmt )* )
}

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only**«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»****«att.global.attribute.xmlid»****«att.global.attribute.n»****«att.global.attribute.xmllang»****«att.global.attribute.rend»****«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»****«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»****«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»****«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»****«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»**

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert:  a machine-readable
    transcription</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compiled by</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

### Example

```
<titleStmt>
  <title>Capgrave's Life of St. John Norbert : transcription électronique</title>
  <respStmt>
    <resp>compilée par</resp>
    <name>P.J. Lucas</name>
  </respStmt>
</titleStmt>
```

**Module:** header

### 2.249 <trailer>

(trailer) contains a closing title or footer appearing at the end of a division of a text.

**Class:** *model.divWrapper.bottom*

**Declaration**

```
element trailer
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  macro.phraseSeq}
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes only

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»  
 «att.global.attribute.rend»  
 «att.global.attribute.xmlbase»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.synch»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.next»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.prev»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»  
 «att.global.linking.attribute.select»  
 «att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<trailer>Explicit pars tertia</trailer>
```

**Module:** textstructure

## 2.250 <unclear>

contains a word, phrase, or passage which cannot be transcribed with certainty because it is illegible or inaudible in the source.

**Class:** *model.pPart.edit*: *model.choicePart*: *att.editLike*

**Declaration**

```

element unclear
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.editLike.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.editLike.attribute.cert,
  att.editLike.attribute.resp,
  att.editLike.attribute.evidence,
  attribute reason { data.words }?,
  attribute hand { data.pointer }?,
  attribute agent { data.enumerated }?,
  macro paraContent
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.editLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.editLike.attribute.cert»

«att.editLike.attribute.resp»

«att.editLike.attribute.evidence»

**Note:** The same element is used for all cases of uncertainty in the transcription of element content, whether for written or spoken material. For other aspects of certainty, uncertainty, and reliability of tagging and transcription, see chapter «CE».The <damage>, <gap>, <del>, <unclear> and <supplied> elements may be closely allied in use. See section «PHCOMB» for discussion of which element is appropriate for which circumstance.

**Module:** core

## 2.251 <variantEncoding>

declares the method used to encode text-critical variants.

**Class:** *model.encodingPart*

**Declaration**

```
element variantEncoding
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
attribute method
{
    "location-referenced" | "double-end-point" | "parallel-segmentation"
},
attribute location { "internal" | "external" },
empty
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<variantEncoding method="location-referenced" location="external"/>
```

**Module:** header

2.252 <w>

(word) represents a grammatical (not necessarily orthographic) word.

**Class:** *model.segLike*: *att.segLike*

**Declaration**

```

element w
{
    att.global.attributes,
    att.segLike.attributes,
    att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
    att.global.attribute.xmlid,
    att.global.attribute.n,
    att.global.attribute.xmllang,
    att.global.attribute.rend,
    att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
}

```

```

att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
att.global.linking.attribute.next,
att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
att.global.linking.attribute.select,
att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
att.segLike.attribute.type,
att.segLike.attribute.function,
att.segLike.attribute.part,
attribute lemma { data.word }?,
( text | model.gLike | model.blockLike | w | m | c | model.global ) *
}

```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes and those inherited from [*att.segLike* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.segLike.attribute.type»

«att.segLike.attribute.function»

«att.segLike.attribute.part»

### Example

```

<w type="verb" lemma="hit">hitt<m type="suffix">ing</m>
</w>

```

**Note:** May contain character data and <seg>, <w>, <m> and <c> elements.

**Module:** analysis

**2.253** <week>

(week) the week component of a structured date.

**Class:** *model.datePart: att.datePart*

**Declaration**

```

element week
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  macro.xtext }

```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

**Example**

```
<title>Le Vieux Cordelier:  
Journal rédigé par Camille Desmoulins</title>,  
<date calendar="Revolutionary" value="1794-02-03">  
  <day type="name">Quintidi</day>  
  <month>Pluviose</month>  
  <week>2e décade</week>,  
  <year>1'an 2 de la République Indivisible</year>  
</date>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 2.254 <when>

(when) indicates a point in time either relative to other elements in the same timeline tag, or absolutely.

**Declaration**

```
element when  
{  
  att.global.attributes,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,  
  att.global.attribute.n,  
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,  
  att.global.attribute.rend,  
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,  
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,  
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,  
  attribute absolute { data.temporal }?,  
  attribute unit { data.enumerated }?,  
  attribute interval { xsd:float { minExclusive = "0" } | "unknown" }?,  
  attribute since { data.pointer }?,  
  empty  
}
```

**Attributes:** In addition to global attributes

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

### Example

```
<when xml:id="TW3" interval="20" since="#w2"/>
```

**Note:** On this element, the global **xml:id** attribute must be supplied to specify an identifier for this point in time. The value used may be chosen freely provided that it is unique within the document and is a syntactically valid name. There is no requirement for values containing numbers to be in sequence.

**Module:** linking

## 2.255 <year>

(year) the year component of a date.

**Class:** *model.datePart: att.datePart*

**Declaration**

```
element year
{
  att.global.attributes,
  att.datePart.attributes,
  att.global.attribute.xmlspace,
  att.global.attribute.xmlid,
  att.global.attribute.n,
  att.global.attribute.xmllang,
  att.global.attribute.rend,
  att.global.attribute.xmlbase,
  att.global.linking.attribute.corresp,
  att.global.linking.attribute.synch,
  att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs,
  att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf,
  att.global.linking.attribute.next,
  att.global.linking.attribute.prev,
  att.global.linking.attribute.exclude,
  att.global.linking.attribute.select,
  att.global.analytic.attribute.ana,
  att.datePart.attribute.value,
  att.datePart.attribute.dur,
  macro.xtext }
```

**Attributes:** Global attributes and those inherited from [*att.datePart* ]

«att.global.attribute.xmlspace»

«att.global.attribute.xmlid»

«att.global.attribute.n»

«att.global.attribute.xmllang»

«att.global.attribute.rend»

«att.global.attribute.xmlbase»

«att.global.linking.attribute.corresp»

«att.global.linking.attribute.synch»

«att.global.linking.attribute.sameAs»

«att.global.linking.attribute.copyOf»

«att.global.linking.attribute.next»

«att.global.linking.attribute.prev»

«att.global.linking.attribute.exclude»

«att.global.linking.attribute.select»

«att.global.analytic.attribute.ana»

«att.datePart.attribute.value»

«att.datePart.attribute.dur»

#### Example

```
<date value="1993-05-14">
  <day type="name">Friday</day>,
  <day type="number">14</day>
  <month>May</month>
  <year>1993</year>
</date>
```

**Module:** namesdates

### 3 Macros defined

#### 3.1 Macro data.certainty

defines the range of attribute values expressing a degree of certainty

##### Declaration

```
data.certainty = "high" | "medium" | "low" | "unknown"
```

**Note:** Certainty may be expressed either by one of the predefined symbolic values high, medium, low, or by means of a numeric value, as defined by the data.probability macro.

**Module:** tei

#### 3.2 Macro data.code

defines the range of attribute values expressing a coded value by means of a pointer to some other element which contains a definition for it.

##### Declaration

```
data.code = xsd:anyURI
```

**Note:** It will usually be the case that the item pointed to is to be found somewhere else in the current TEI document, typically in the header, but this is not mandatory.

**Module:** tei

#### 3.3 Macro data.count

defines the range of attribute values used for a non-negative integer value used as a count

##### Declaration

```
data.count = xsd:nonNegativeInteger
```

**Note:** Only positive integer values are permitted

**Module:** tei

### 3.4 Macro data.duration

defines the range of attribute values available for representation of a duration in time

#### Declaration

```
data.duration = xsd:duration
```

**Note:** A duration is expressed as a sequence of digit-letter pairs, preceded by the letter P; the letter gives the unit and may be Y (year), M (month), D (day), H (hour) M (minute) or S (second). If a duration includes both hours, minutes or seconds, and days, hour or minutes, the character T must be used to separate the "time" part of the duration from the "day" part. This scheme is defined in ISO 8601.

**Module:** tei

### 3.5 Macro data.enumerated

defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token taken from a list of documented possibilities

#### Declaration

```
data.enumerated = token
```

**Note:** Typically, the list of documented possibilities will be provided (or exemplified) by a value list in the associated element specification. If the value contains whitespace, it must be normalised: neither leading or trailing sequences of whitespace characters nor internal sequences of more than one whitespace character are allowed.

**Module:** tei

### 3.6 Macro data.key

defines the range of attribute values expressing a coded value by means of an arbitrary identifier, typically taken from a set of externally-defined possibilities

#### Declaration

```
data.key = string
```

**Note:** Information about the set of possible values for an attribute using this datatype may (but need not) be documented in the document header. Externally defined constraints, for example that values should be legal keys in an external database system, cannot usually be enforced by a TEI system. Similarly, because the key is externally defined, no constraint other than a requirement that it consist of Unicode characters is possible.

**Module:** tei

### 3.7 Macro data.language

defines the range of attribute values used to identify a particular combination of human language and writing system

#### Declaration

```
data.language = xsd:language
```

**Note:** The values for this attribute are language 'tags' as defined in RFC 3066 or its successor. Examples include

**sn** Shona

**zh-TW** Taiwanese

**en-SL** English as spoken in Sierra Leone

**pl** Polish

**es-MX** Spanish as spoken in Mexico

**Module:** tei

## 3 MACROS DEFINED

---

### 3.8 Macro data.name

defines the range of attribute values expressed as an XML name or identifier

#### Declaration

```
data.name = xsd:Name
```

**Note:** Attributes using this datatype must contain a single word which follows the rules defining a legal XML name: for example they cannot include whitespace or begin with digits.

**Module:** tei

### 3.9 Macro data.names

defines the range of attribute values expressed as a whitespace-separated list of single words or tokens

#### Declaration

```
data.names = list { data.name+ }
```

**Note:** Each sequence of whitespace within the list of names is treated as a single space.

**Module:** tei

### 3.10 Macro data.namespace

(an XML namespace) defines the range of attribute values used to indicate XML namespaces as defined by the W3C Namespaces in XML technical recommendation

#### Declaration

```
data.namespace = xsd:anyURI
```

**Note:** The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 2396 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) Reference

**Module:** tei

### 3.11 Macro data.numeric

defines the range of attribute values used for numeric values

#### Declaration

```
data.numeric = xsd:double | xsd:decimal
```

**Note:** Any numeric value that can be represented as a decimal number. In addition, the range of values that can be represented in an IEEE double precision (i.e., 64-bit) floating point number may be represented using scientific notation. Roughly that range is  $\pm 10^{-323}$  to  $\pm 10^{308}$ . To represent a number expressed in scientific notation, ‘exponential notation’ is used in the attribute value. The significand (sometimes called the mantissa) is written as a decimal number, followed by the letter E, followed by an integer exponent. The multiplication sign and the base itself (10) are implied. Either the significand or the exponent (or both) may be a negative number, in which case it should be preceded by a minus sign. There should be no whitespace separating the significand from the E from the exponent. E.g.,  $3 \times 10^8$  can be expressed as **3E8**. Other examples of scientific notation include:

- **10E10** (the speed of light in centimetres per second)
- **9.12E-31** (the mass of an electron in Kg)
- **4E11** (estimated number of stars in our galaxy)
- **-1.76E11** (electron charge to mass quotient in coulombs per Kg)

Either e or E may be used to separate the significand from the exponent, however these Guidelines recommend E be used both for consistency with other standards bodies and to avoid confusion with the mathematical constant  $e$ .

**Module:** tei

### 3.12 Macro data.outputMeasurement

(HTML dimension) defines a range of values for use in specifying the size of an object that is intended for display on the web

#### Declaration

```
data.outputMeasurement =
  token
  {
    pattern = "[\\-+]?\\d+(\\.\\d+)?(%|cm|mm|in|pt|pc|px|em|ex|gd|rem|vw|vh|vm)"
  }
```

**Note:** These values map directly onto the values used by XSLFO and CSS. For definitions of the units see those specifications; at the time of this writing the most complete list is in the CSS3 working draft.

**Module:** tei

### 3.13 Macro data.pattern

defines a range of attribute values expressed as a regular expression

#### Declaration

```
data.pattern = token
```

**Note:** 'A regular expression, often called a pattern, is an expression that describes a set of strings. They are usually used to give a concise description of a set, without having to list all elements. For example, the set containing the three strings Handel, Händel, and Haendel can be described by the pattern "H(ä|ae?)ndel" (or alternatively, it is said that the pattern "H(ä|ae?)ndel" matches each of the three strings)' [wikipedia].

**Module:** tei

### 3.14 Macro data.pointer

defines the range of attribute values used to provide a single pointer to any other resource, either within the current document or elsewhere

#### Declaration

```
data.pointer = xsd:anyURI
```

**Note:** The range of syntactically valid values is defined by RFC 2396 Uniform Resource Identifier (URI) Reference

**Module:** tei

### 3.15 Macro data.pointers

defines the range of attribute values used to provide a list of pointers to other resources, either within the current document or elsewhere

#### Declaration

```
data.pointers = list { data.pointer+ }
```

**Note:** A white-space delimited list of values, defined by the datatype data.pointer

**Module:** tei

### 3.16 Macro data.probability

defines the range of attribute values expressing a probability

#### Declaration

```
data.probability = xsd:double { minInclusive = "0" maxInclusive = "1" }
```

**Note:** Probability is expressed as a real number between 0 and 1; 0 representing certainly false and 1 representing certainly true.

**Module:** tei

## 3 MACROS DEFINED

---

### 3.17 Macro data.sex

defines the range of attribute values used to identify human or animal sex

#### Declaration

```
data.sex = "0" | "1" | "2" | "9"
```

**Note:** The values are taken from ISO 5218:1977 Representation of Human Sexes; 0 indicates unknown; 1 indicates male; 2 indicates female; and 9 indicates not applicable.

**Module:** tei

### 3.18 Macro data.temporal

defines the range of attribute values expressing a temporal expression such as a date, a time, or a combination of them

#### Declaration

```
data.temporal =  
  xsd:date  
| xsd:gYear  
| xsd:gMonth  
| xsd:gDay  
| xsd:gYearMonth  
| xsd:gMonthDay  
| xsd:time  
| xsd:dateTime  
| token  
  {  
    pattern = "(-?[0-9]{4}-(0[1-9]|1[0-2])-(0[1-9]|[12][0-9]|3[01])T)?([01][0-9]|2[0-3])(:[0-5][0-9])?(Z)"  
  }
```

**Note:** A normalized form of temporal expression conforming to the W3C XML Schema Part 2: Datatypes Second Edition, except that times may be expressed with reduced precision (i.e., to the minute or the hour). Software intended for use with W3C XML Schema datatypes may be unable to properly process times expressed with reduced precision. If it is likely that the value used is to be compared with another, then a time zone indicator should always be included, and only the dateTime representation should be used.

**Module:** tei

### 3.19 Macro data.truthValue

defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value

#### Declaration

```
data.truthValue = xsd:boolean
```

**Note:** This datatype applies only for cases where uncertainty is inappropriate; if the attribute concerned may have a value other than true or false, e.g. "unknown", or "inapplicable", it should have the extended version of this datatype: data.xTruthValue

**Module:** tei

### 3.20 Macro data.word

defines the range of attribute values expressed as a single word or token

#### Declaration

```
data.word = token { pattern = "(\p{L}|\p{N}|\p{P}|\p{S})+" }
```

**Note:** Attributes using this datatype must contain a single 'word' which contains only letters, digits, punctuation characters, or symbols: thus it cannot include whitespace.

**Module:** tei

### 3.21 Macro data.words

defines the range of attribute values expressed as a whitespace-separated list of single words or tokens

#### Declaration

```
data.words = list { data.word+ }
```

**Note:** Each sequence of whitespace within the list of words or tokens is treated as a single space.

**Module:** tei

### 3.22 Macro data.xTruthValue

defines the range of attribute values used to express a truth value which may be unknown

#### Declaration

```
data.xTruthValue = xsd:boolean | "unknown" | "inapplicable"
```

**Note:** In cases where where uncertainty is inappropriate, use the datatype data.TruthValue

**Module:** tei

### 3.23 Macro macro.bodyPart.div

(a set of common elements in body) groups together a sequence of declarations which are used in the definition of macro.bodyPart.main, which is itself used in the definition of the body element

#### Declaration

```
macro.bodyPart.div = div, ( div | divGen | ( model.global ) )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.24 Macro macro.bodyPart.div0

(a set of common elements in body) groups together a sequence of declarations which are used in the definition of macro.bodyPart.main, which is itself used in the definition of the body element

#### Declaration

```
macro.bodyPart.div0 = div0, ( div0 | divGen | ( model.global ) )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.25 Macro macro.bodyPart.div1

(a set of common elements in body) groups together a sequence of declarations which are used in the definition of macro.bodyPart.main, which is itself used in the definition of the body element

#### Declaration

```
macro.bodyPart.div1 = div1, ( div1 | divGen | ( model.global ) )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.26 Macro macro.bodyPart.main

(main set of common elements in body) groups together a sequence of declarations which are used in the definition of the body element

#### Declaration

```
macro.bodyPart.main =
  ( macro.bodyPart.pre ),
  (
    ( macro.bodyPart.div )
    | ( macro.bodyPart.div0 )
    | ( macro.bodyPart.div1 )
  )
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.27 Macro macro.bodyPart.pre

(a set of common elements in body) groups together a sequence of declarations which are used in the definition of macro.bodyPart.main, which is itself used in the definition of the body element

#### Declaration

```
macro.bodyPart.pre = ( divGen, model.global* )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.28 Macro macro.component

(component for mixed or general base) defines the set of component-level elements for use with the mixed or general base; these are elements which can appear directly within text bodies or text divisions.

#### Declaration

```
macro.component = model.common, mix.drama, mix.spoken, mix.dictionaries
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.29 Macro macro.componentSeq

(component-sequence) defines a sequence of component-level elements (such as paragraphs or lists) which can occur directly within text divisions and in similar positions.

#### Declaration

```
macro.componentSeq = ( ( macro.component ) | ( model.global ) )*
```

**Note:** This macro is used in each base tag set to define the content of <div> and similar elements.

**Module:** tei

### 3.30 Macro macro.fileDescPart

(file description elements) groups elements which occur inside fileDesc and biblFull

#### Declaration

```
macro.fileDescPart =  
  titleStmt, editionStmt?, extent?, publicationStmt, seriesStmt?, notesStmt?
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.31 Macro macro.glossSeq

(glossing sequence) defines a sequence of descriptive or identifying elements which characterize a markup object.

#### Declaration

```
macro.glossSeq = altIdent?, equiv*, gloss*, desc*
```

**Note:** This macro defines a standard content model for all occasions where some markup object is being explained or glossed.

**Module:** tei

### 3.32 Macro macro.paraContent

(paragraph content) defines the content of paragraphs and similar elements.

#### Declaration

```
macro.paraContent =  
  ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.inter | model.global )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.33 Macro macro.phraseSeq

(phrase sequence) defines a sequence of character data and phrase-level elements.

#### Declaration

```
macro.phraseSeq = ( text | model.gLike | model.phrase | model.global )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.34 Macro macro.specialPara

(‘special’ paragraph content) defines the content model of elements such as notes or list items, which either contain a series of component-level elements or else have the same structure as a paragraph, containing a series of phrase-level and inter-level elements.

#### Declaration

```
macro.specialPara =
(
  text
  | model.gLike      | model.phrase      | model.inter      | model.divPart      | model.global      )*
```

**Module:** tei

### 3.35 Macro macro.xtext

(extended text) defines a sequence of character data and gaiji elements.

#### Declaration

```
macro.xtext = ( text | model.gLike )*
```

**Module:** tei